



# NASIR ACADEMY

WORKBOOK LEVEL 5

**Ages 14+**



“Nations cannot be reformed without the reformation of their youth”

Hazrat Musleh Maud<sup>ra</sup>

[WWW.NASIRACADEMY.CA](http://WWW.NASIRACADEMY.CA)



Name







## Message from Amir Jama'at Canada

*In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful*

Dear Students of Nasir Academy:

Assalamo 'alaikum wa Rahmatullah wa Barakatoh!

In an era where Dajjal's schemes aim to divert us from Allah Ta'ala towards materialism, we must focus on attaining nearness to Allah through inner purification and spiritual growth. Nasir Academy offers a school-like environment where we can concentrate on fundamental religious education and understand our true purpose in life: to worship Allah.

At Nasir Academy, you will learn the Holy Qur'an, the basics of Islam, Salat and prayers, and the history of Islam and Ahmadiyyat. Understanding these subjects will prepare you to serve Islam Ahmadiyyat when you grow into adulthood and to propagate its peaceful teachings. Furthermore, these foundational teachings will also protect you from Dajjal and its deceptions. Insha' Allah.

My main advice to you is to carefully listen to the messages and guidance of Hazrat Khalifatul-Masih V (may Allah be his Helper) which he imparts in his weekly Friday sermons. Recently, our beloved Khalifa (aa) provided us with specific prayers to say regularly. I will briefly outline them below, as taken from Alislam.org.

"His Holiness (aa) said that he wished to make an appeal; the Third Caliph (rh) saw a vision in which an elder said to him that every adult in the Community should recite Durood Sharif [prayer for invoking salutations upon the Holy Prophet (sa)]:

1) ***SubhanAllahi wa bi Hamdihi SubhanAllahil Azeem Allahumma Salle ala Muhammadin wa aali Muhammad*** (Holy is Allah and worthy of all praise, Holy is Allah the Great, O Allah bestow Thy blessings upon Muhammad and the people of Muhammad) 200 times.

Those who are 15-25 years of age recite it at least 100 times, and if children recite it at least 33 times and parents help their infant children recite it at least three to four times.

2) Then recite *Astaghfirullah Rabbi Min Kulli Zanbinwwa Atubu Ilaih* (I seek forgiveness from Allah, my Lord, for all my sins and turn to Him) 100 times.

3) His Holiness (aba) said that he would also include the prayer *Rabbi Kullu Shay'in Khadimuka Rabbi Fahfazni Wansurni Warhamni* (My Lord everything is subservient to You; My Lord protect me, help me and have mercy on me) to be recited not just in these days but generally as well.

According to the vision of the Third Caliph (rh), the elder said that if these were recited then you will become safeguarded in a secure fortress, impenetrable by Satan, made with iron walls reaching the heavens. His Holiness (aa) said that these days when Satan is trying to attack our Community and the world at large, the only way for us to remain safeguarded is through prayers. Hence, we should recite these prayers, not just during the days of Jalsa but throughout the year." [From <https://www.alislam.org/friday-sermon/2024-08-23.html>]

I pray that you respond to the call of our beloved Khalifa, say these prayers regularly, and contribute to fortifying the fortress of Islam, iron walls of which reach the heavens. Ameen!

Wassalam!



Lal Khan Malik

Serving as National Amir Jama'at Canada

## Table of Contents

<b>Auxiliary Pledges</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Parents' Resources</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Part I</b>	
<b>The Holy Qur'an</b>	<b>13</b>
General Knowledge	14
Sajdah Tilawat	18
Tajweed Rules: Qalqalah	18
Tajweed Rules: Rule of Laam in Allah	21
Enrichment: Holy Qur'an Research	22
Social Media	23
Gossip	24
Promoting a Simpler Life	25
Blessings of the Holy Qur'an	26
<b>Salat and Prayers</b>	<b>27</b>
Quranic Surahs	28
Surah Al-Baqarah (Verses 9-17)	28
Ayat-ul-Kursi (Surah Al Baqarah, v. 256)	30
Translation of Surah Al-Falaq	32
Translation of Surah An-Nās	34
Salat in Arabic	35
Funeral Prayer	35
Prayers	38
Seeking Allah's Protection	38
Achieving Allah's Blessings	38
<b>Basics of Islam</b>	<b>41</b>
Hadith	42
Against Backbiting	43
Persistence in Prayers	39
Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi	44
Introduction	44
Condition 1	45

Condition 2	45
Tarbiyat Topics	46
Love of Allah	46
Loyalty to Country	48
Tarbiyat Stories	50
Delhi is Still Far Away	50
The Cobbler's Hajj	51
Debate	53
Old Lady's Wish	54
A Knock at the Door	55
<b>History of Islam</b>	<b>59</b>
Life of Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> – Part I	60
	<b>Part II</b>
<b>The Holy Qur'an</b>	<b>75</b>
Tajweed Rules: Ghunna	76
Tajweed Rules: Ikhfa	78
Tajweed Rules: Idghaam e yarmaloon	79
Enrichment: Holy Qur'an Research	81
Gender Preference	82
Prayers	83
Purdah: For Men and Women	84
Racism	85
Huroof Al-Izh-haar	86
Iqlaab	87
Huroof e Mustalia (Thick and Heavy Letters)	88
Response Prayers	91
Madd-e-Mutasil (Attached Prolongation)	94
Madd-e-Munfasil (Detached Prolongation)	95
Madd-e-Lazim (Compulsory Prolongation)	96
<b>Salat and Prayers</b>	<b>99</b>
Quranic Surahs	100
Surah Al-Zilzāl	100
Surah Al-Qāri'ah	102

Translation of Surah Al-Ikhlās	103
Translation of Surah Al-Lahab	104
Translation of Surah Al-Nasr (pronounced an-nasr)	104
Prayers	106
For Allah's Mercy	106
For Mercy and Forgiveness	107
Quranic Surahs	108
Surah Al-A'lā	108
Surah Al-Inshirāh	111
Prayers	112
For Success in Calling to Allah	112
For a Rigueous End of Life	113
Quranic Surahs	114
Surah Al-Duhā	114
Surah At-Tin	115
Surah Al-Qadr	117
Prayers	118
In Favor of Our Spouses and Children	118
For Protection Against the Enemy	119
<b>Basics of Islam</b>	121
Hadith	122
A Muslim is a Mirror	122
Criteria of a True Muslim	123
Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi	124
Condition #3	124
Condition #4	125
Condition #5	126
Tarbiyat Topics	127
Patience in Everyday Life	127
Why I Believe in Islam	128
Guidance in the Holy Qur'an	131
Tarbiyat Stories	134
A Blind Boy	134
Who Will Save You Now?	135
A Pretend Dinner	137
Donation in the Dark	138
Why Have You Forsaken Me?	140

Hadith	142
Be the First to Greet	142
The Upper Hand	142
Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi	143
Condition #6	143
Condition #7	144
Hadith	146
Be Moderate	146
Keep Good Company	146
Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi	148
Condition #8	148
Condition #9	149
Condition #10	149
<b>History of Islam</b>	<b>151</b>
Life of the Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> – Part II	152
Life and Death of Jesus <sup>as</sup>	165
Asharah Mubashsharah	168
Important Places & Artifacts	170
The Sihah Sittah	176
Khalifatul-Masih	178
<b>Enrichment Material</b>	<b>207</b>
Attributes of Allah	208
Additional Coursework	212
Rumuz-i-Auqaf	214
<b>Answer Key</b>	<b>215</b>
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>245</b>



## Salutatory Abbreviations

- sa *Sallallahu 'Alaihi Wa Sallam (sal-lal-laa-hu 'a-lai-hi wa sal-lam)* – peace and blessings of Allah be upon him – whenever the Holy Prophet Muhammad is mentioned.
- as *'Alaihis-Salam* – peace be upon him – used for other prophets of Allah or the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.
- ra *Radiyallahu 'Anhu (ra-di-yal-laa-hu 'an-hu)* – may Allah be pleased with him – used with the names of companions of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> or the companions of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.
- rh *Rahimahullahu 'Alaihi (ra-hi-ma-hul-laa-hu 'a-lai-hi)* – may Allah have mercy on him – used for other holy personages.
- aba *Ayyadahullahu Ta'ala Bi-Nasrih-il-'Aziz (ay-ya-da-hul-laa-hu ta-'aa-laa bi-nas-ri-hil-'a-zeez)* – may Allah strengthen him with His Mighty help – used with the title of the present Khalifat-ul-Masih.

## Reference Material Used

*Basics of Religious Education* – 5th Edition by Sheikh Abdul Hadi

*Nasir Academy Workbook* Level 2 and Level 3 by Ahmadiyya Children's Sunday School, Canada

MTA Al-Tarteel classes, <http://www.mta.tv/tarteel>

Al-Tarteel PDF files, <http://www.mta.tv/tarteel>

*Prayers*, Compiled by Hafiz Muzaffar Ahmad

*Points to Ponder* by Mirzā Bashīruddīn Mahmud Ahmad

*The Way of the Righteous* by Syed Hasanat Ahmad

Review of Religion (article by Hafiz Muzaffar Ahmad)

## Images

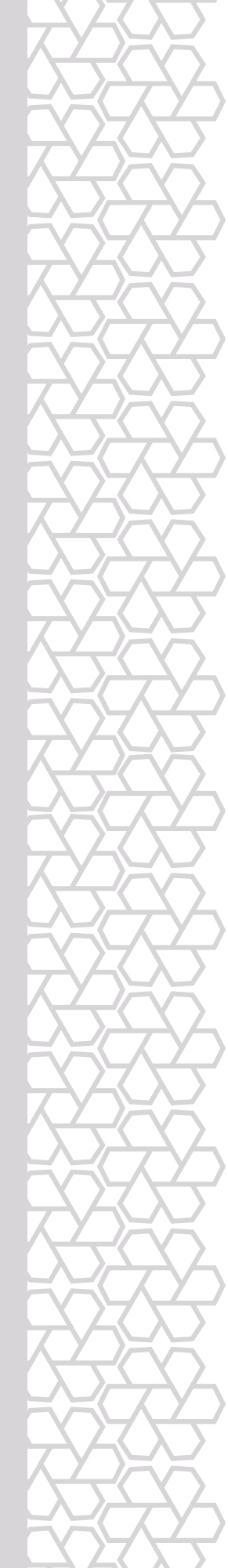
Images are courtesy of shutterstock.com, freepik.com, and wikipedia.org.







# **Auxiliary Pledges**



### Atfal Pledge

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ  
وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ

*ash-ha-du al-laa i-laa-ha il-lal-laa-hu wah-da-hoo laa sha-ree-ka la-hoo wa  
ash-ha-du an-na mu-ham-ma-dan 'ab-du-hoo wa ra-soo-luh*

I bear witness that there is none worthy of worship except Allah. He is One and has no partner, and I bear witness that Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> is His servant and Messenger.

I sincerely promise that I shall always be ready to serve my faith Islam, Jama'at Ahmadiyya Muslima, my nation, and my country. I shall always tell the truth, will not insult and abuse anybody, and I will try my best to obey all instructions given by Hadrat Khalifatul Masih. Insha'Allah.

### Nasirat Pledge

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ  
وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ

*ash-ha-du al-laa i-laa-ha il-lal-laa-hu wah-da-hoo laa sha-ree-ka la-hoo wa  
ash-ha-du an-na mu-ham-ma-dan 'ab-du-hoo wa ra-soo-luh*

I bear witness that there is none worthy of worship except Allah. He is One and has no partner, and I bear witness that Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> is His servant and Messenger.

I solemnly promise that I shall always keep myself ready to serve my faith, my nation and my country. I shall always adhere to the truth and shall always be prepared to make every sacrifice for the perpetuation of the Ahmadiyya Khilafat. Insha'Allah.



# Parents' Resources

## Did You Know?

Young kids learn a lot about how to act by watching their parents. The younger they are, the more cues they take from you.<sup>1</sup>

Children, in general, do tend to grow up to be a lot like their parents. Social scientists and genetic researchers have identified many cycles that loop from one generation to the next. Children who live in homes where parents smoke are more likely to become smokers. Parents who abuse drugs or alcohol are more likely to someday find their children do the same. Adults abused when they were children may indeed hurt their own children. And that is not all. Parents with low self-esteem raise children with the same affliction.<sup>2</sup>



## Parenting Tip

It turns out that the folk wisdom, “Seeing is believing,” holds truth after all. What kids see and believe, they become. Every day, parents build a legacy for their kids to inherit. Choose to be a parent who models family traits worth believing in and worth building upon. After all, what goes around comes around . . . unceasingly from one generation to the next.<sup>3</sup>

### **Do what you want your children to do when they grow up.**

- If you respect your parents, they will respect you when they grow up.
- If you respect the authority of Allah, they will respect His authority. If you worship Him, they will worship Him.
- When speaking to someone else, model the way you would like your child to speak. Wait your turn to speak and hold two-way conversations.
- If you are trying to encourage your child to eat healthy foods, choose more nutritious meals and snacks for yourself.

<sup>1</sup>kidshealth.org

<sup>2,3</sup><https://www.easternflorida.edu/community-resources/child-development-centers/parent-resource-library/documents/parents-powerful-role-models.pdf>

## Islamic Guidance

Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> addressed parents specifically in a sermon and advised, "...help (children) acquire a noble character. Character is built in childhood. If it is delayed, then you have to work very hard. There is a saying: strike the iron while hot. Allah keeps the iron of childhood hot for a long time and whatever impressions you make on it while it is hot will stay on it forever. Hence this is the time for training. In this context remember that no matter how much verbal instructions parents may give to their child if their own conduct is not in accordance with what they teach then their children will pick up their weaknesses and discard their strengths. This is the law of interaction between two generations. Disregarding this law can ruin the nations and awareness of it can lead them towards progress. The law that governs the impact of one generation on the next is that children are quick at imitating the weaknesses of their parents and pay little attention to what they verbally tell them. If parents preach high morals to their children but are morally weak themselves, the child will pick up their weaknesses. Therefore, remember that in order to train these children you will have to train yourselves."<sup>4</sup>



<sup>4</sup> Friday sermon, 9/8/1989



## Pop Quiz

**While out to dinner, a mother tells the cashier at a restaurant that her 12-year-old son is only 11, so she can get a discount at the buffet. The son looks at the mother, puzzled because he knows he is 12 and will be 13 soon. The mother continues to argue with the cashier, insisting that her son is 11. What do you think the son learns from watching this interaction?**

- a) It is okay for parents to lie to get what they want but not children.
- b) It is acceptable to lie to save money.
- c) It is okay to lie because moral grounds shift situationally.

## Pop Quiz Introspection

While Allah may forgive your sins and grant you children who inherit only the best of qualities, chances are they are going to pick up both your good and bad habits. It is easier for us to adopt mannerisms that we always see modeled before us. "Do as I say, and not as I do" is not a sound parenting strategy. Remember that what you may consider a minor infraction is setting the stage in your child's mind about what is acceptable.

It is unlikely that the child will learn that it is okay for parents only to "fudge the truth" and not for him/her. In their mind, all truths are now relative to the desired outcome, therefore choice "c" becomes the new moral ground.



## Wonder Together

*Use the following questions to encourage a dialog with your child during everyday conversations.*

What parts of my personality are shared with my mother/father?

What are/were the best characteristics of my parents?

How can one show respect towards elders?

What does hypocrisy mean? What does the Holy Qur'an say about hypocrites?

What qualities am I most afraid of passing down to my children?

## Read Together

**The following titles are available on [amibookstore.us](http://amibookstore.us) and Jalsa bookstalls:**

*Stories from Early Ahmadiyyat* by Rashid Ahmad Chaudhry

*My Mother* by Chaudhry Zafrullah Khan

**The following titles are available from online retailers:**

*The Invisible String* by Patrice Karst

*The Giving Tree* by Shel Silverstein





# Part I





# The Holy Qur'an

## General Knowledge

The word Qur'an means 'often read' or 'often recited.' It is the collection of verbal revelations from Allah the Almighty, to the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> through the angel Jibreel<sup>as</sup>. It took **22 years and five months** to be revealed completely (13 years in Mecca and almost ten years in Medina).

### Compilation of the Holy Qur'an

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> used to memorize the revealed verses, and many of his companions committed them to memory. He had them written by other scribes. Companions would also write them down on leather, the bark of trees, or stone. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> indicated the arrangement of verses and chapters according to divine guidance. The angel **Jibreel<sup>as</sup>** rehearsed the Qur'an with the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> every Ramadan, confirming the content and its arrangement. The Qur'an was compiled in one volume during the time of **Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup>**, the first Khalifa of the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>. It was during the time of the third Khalifa, **Hadrat Uthman<sup>ra</sup>**, that the first standard text of the Holy Qur'an was issued and copies were sent to different parts of the Muslim world. Two of the copies exist to date. The language of the Holy Qur'an is **Arabic**, but the translations of the Arabic text exist in almost every language.

### Chapters and Verses of the Holy Qur'an

The Qur'an is divided into **114 surahs** or chapters. This division was based upon their subject matter and was decided by the authority of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. Each surah has a name given to it and is further divided into **aayaat** or verses. A reference to a verse in a specific chapter of the Qur'an is generally represented by two numbers separated by a colon ":". For example, the reference (29:49) means the 49th verse of the 29th chapter.

### Divine Promise to Preserve the Holy Qur'an

The Holy Qur'an is the only book in the world to claim that its every word is the actual **word of God**. It also claims that Allah Himself will protect and preserve the Qur'an. No other religious scripture can claim to have its original text entirely preserved.

### Etiquette of Reciting the Holy Qur'an

Before reciting the Holy Qur'an, **At'taawwudh**, "I seek refuge with Allah from Satan the rejected," should be recited (16:99). The first verse of every Surah,

except **Surah At-Taubah**, is Tasmiyah, "In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful."

Even when we recite from the middle of a chapter, we should recite At'ta-awwudh and Tasmiyah before the recitation. Surah At-Taubah is considered an extension of the previous surah, Al-Anfal and therefore, does not begin with Tasmiyah.

The Holy Qur'an should be recited with full concentration, and one should try to understand its meaning. This purifies the heart and helps in getting rid of immorality.

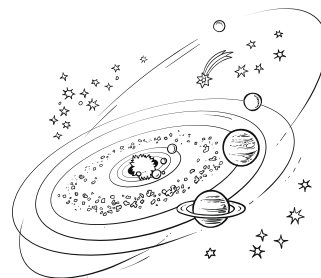
The Qur'an can be recited at any convenient time, but the best time is after **Fajr Prayer**. Allah says in the Holy Qur'an, "Verily the recitation of the Qur'an at dawn is especially acceptable to God." (17:79)



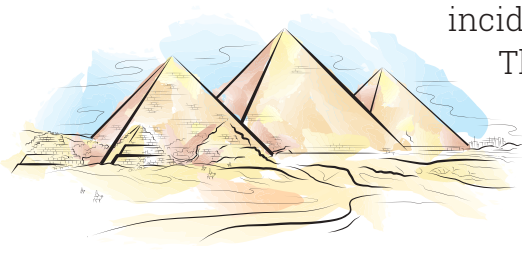
### What is Written in the Qur'an?

There are thousands of people all over the world who have memorized the entire Qur'an, and there is a great reward for them. Every Muslim is encouraged to recite the Qur'an regularly and understand it. There are three broad categories of messages in the Holy Qur'an.

1. The Holy Qur'an gives us **instructions** for what we should and should not do. It contains laws and rules of conduct. These laws and codes of conduct help us to create harmonious and peaceful societies.
2. The Holy Qur'an speaks to us about the past. We learn the **history** of prophets such as Hadrat Adam<sup>as</sup>, Hadrat Ibrahim<sup>as</sup>, Hadrat Yusuf<sup>as</sup>, Hadrat Dawud<sup>as</sup>, Hadrat Sulaiman<sup>as</sup>, Hadrat Isa<sup>as</sup> and several others. We are given their accounts so that we learn from history and do not make the same mistakes made by nations before us.
3. There are **prophecies** about the future written in the Holy Qur'an. The Holy Qur'an contains many prophecies of the latter days, some of which have already been fulfilled. For example, it contains a prophecy about the time when quicker means of transport would be used. It also mentions the extensions of the earth, a prophecy that was fulfilled, in a way, when man set foot on the moon. It claims that all heavenly bodies revolve in different orbits. These facts have been proven now but were recorded in the Holy Qur'an 1400 years ago. Another prophecy in the Qur'an is about Pharaoh. It was revealed to the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> that when Pharaoh was drowned, his body was saved and was preserved so that it could serve as a sign for future generations. This







incident is only mentioned in the Holy Qur'an.

This prophecy came true in the previous century when the body of the Pharaoh was discovered and identified. This proved the fact that after he was drowned, his dead body was recovered, wrapped up, and preserved. Fulfillment of prophecies confirms the divine source of the Holy Qur'an and strengthens the faith of believers.

Here is a list of some other important messages written in the Qur'an:

- The Qur'an rejects the belief in more than one God. It teaches us that considering anything or anyone else as His partner or His equal is the worst sin.
- It explains the true concepts of the birth and death of Hadrat Isa<sup>as</sup> (Jesus), and explains that Allah has no sons.
- The Holy Qur'an teaches us about the equality of mankind. Taqwa and good deeds are the only criteria of nearness to God. It tells us that no nation, tribe, or race is superior to another; they are just a means to identify people from one another.
- The Holy Qur'an teaches us that worship does not just mean the performing of Prayers, but also includes service to our fellow human beings.
- The Qur'an stresses simplicity, honesty and kindness.
- It commands us to be fair and just in the distribution of wealth through Zakat and charity.
- It discusses, in detail, the code of conduct in times of war and peace, as well as international relations and agreements.
- The Holy Qur'an forbids us from foods and substances that lead to irresponsible behavior and immoral conduct. Therefore, it has banned alcohol, gambling and eating the flesh of swine.

The Holy Qur'an is the word of God that contains a complete set of life rules and is the **final law** and **Shariah**. The messages in the Holy Qur'an will unfold to mankind throughout the ages, as it is a book for all times to come. In the words of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>:

"The Holy Qur'an is so glorious that none other can excel it in glory. It is "Hakam," the one whose judgment is ultimate; it is "Muhaimin," a compact collection of all guidance." (Ruhani Khaza'in, Vol 16: Khutba Ilhamiyya, p. 103)



**Exercise 1.1: Choose the correct answer for each question.**

**The Holy Qur'an was revealed in:**

- a. 2 years and 3 months
- b. 22 years and 5 months
- c. 18 years
- d. 40 years and 2 months

**The Angel Mika'il<sup>as</sup> brought down the verses of the Qur'an.**

TRUE                      FALSE

**The Holy Qur'an was compiled into one book under:**

- a. Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup>
- b. Hadrat Umar<sup>ra</sup>
- c. Hadrat Uthman<sup>ra</sup>
- d. Hadrat Ali<sup>ra</sup>

**The Holy Qur'an is the final law or Shariah for:**

- a. Muslims
- b. Muslims and Jews
- c. Muslims, Jews and Christians
- d. All of mankind

**The Holy Qur'an teaches us:**

- a. To share our wealth responsibly
- b. Equality of mankind
- c. Rules of war and peacetime
- d. All of the above

**What is the best time for the recitation of the Holy Qur'an?**

- a. At Fajr
- b. At Zuhr
- c. At Asr

**The 53rd verse of Surah Al-Baqarah (Chapter 2 of the Holy Quran) would be referenced as 53:2.**

TRUE                      FALSE

**There are 114 chapters or surahs in the Qur'an.**

TRUE                      FALSE

**List three prophecies contained in the Holy Qur'an.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Sajdah Tilawat

During the recitation of the Holy Qur'an, if you come across a verse that indicates *Sajdah* (prostration), the reciter should perform the prostration and recite the following prayer in that posture:

اللَّهُمَّ سَجِدْ لَكَ رُوحِي وَجَسَدِي وَجَنَانِي-

*al-laa-hum-ma sa-ja-da la-ka roo-hee wa ja-sa-dee wa ja-naa-nee*

Translation: O Allah, my spirit, my body and my heart prostrate before You.

(Tirmidhi--Fi Sujud-ul-Qur'an)

**Exercise 1.2: Memorize the Arabic for the Sajdah Tilawat.**

**Exercise 1.3: Research how many sujood are contained in the Holy Qur'an. Try to see if you can figure out why there is a sajdah at the end of those verses.**

## Tajweed Rules: Qalqalah

### Al-Tarteel Lesson #2

- <http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-2>

**Qalqalah** means to shake, to jerk.

Huruf-e-Qalqalah means those letters which are pronounced with a jerking sound. These are:

ق ط ب ج د

For easy reference, you can remember the words

قُطْبُ جَدِّ

When pronounced, a Qalqalah letter must be mute either by an original 'sukoon' or by a conditional 'sukoon.'

Look at the following examples:

- لَا أُقْسِمُ بِهَذَا الْبَلَدِ
- لَقَدْ خَلَقْنَا الْإِنْسَانَ فِي كَبَدٍ
- وَمَا أَذْرَائِكَ مَا الطَّارِقُ ○ النَّجْمُ الثَّاقِبُ
- إِنَّ بَطْشَ رَبِّكَ لَشَدِيدٌ ○ إِنَّهُ هُوَ يُبَدِّلُ وَيُعِيدُ

REMEMBER, that a word can *never* start with a Qalqalah.

### Categories of Qalqalah

With regards to pronunciation, there are three categories, or degrees of Qalqalah:

1. Soft
2. Moderate
3. Strong

Qalqalah is pronounced **softly** when it is in the middle of a word. For example,

- سَنُقَرِّئُكَ فَلَا تَنْسَى
- الَّذِي أَطَعَهُمْ مِّنْ جُوعٍ ۖ وَآمَنَهُمْ مِّنْ خَوْفٍ
- وَالْآخِرَةُ خَيْرٌ وَأَبْقَى
- إِلَّا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ فَلَهُمْ أَجْرٌ غَيْرُ مَمْنُونٍ
- وَرَأَيْتِ النَّاسَ يَدْخُلُونَ فِي دِينِ اللَّهِ أَفْوَاجًا

Qalqalah is pronounced with a **moderate** jerking sound when any Qalqalah letter is present at the end of a word in 'Waqf' (pause) with or without 'sukoon'. For example,

وَالسَّمَاءِ وَالطَّارِقِ ۝  
 وَاللَّهُ مِنْ وَرَائِهِمْ مُحِيطٌ ۝  
 وَأَمْرَاتُهُ ط حَمَّالَةَ الْحَطَبِ ۝  
 وَالسَّمَاءِ ذَاتِ الْبُرُوجِ ۝  
 وَالْيَوْمِ الْمَوْعُودِ ۝

Qalqalah is pronounced with a **strong** jerking sound when any Qalqalah letter with Tashdeed sign is present at the end of a word in 'Waqf' (pause). For example,

وَيَقْتُلُونَ النَّبِيْنَ بِغَيْرِ الْحَقِّ ط  
 وَلَعَذَابُ الْآخِرَةِ أَشَقُّ ۝  
 تَبَّتْ يَدَا أَبِي لَهَبٍ وَتَبَّ ۝  
 وَأَذِّنْ فِي النَّاسِ بِالْحَجِّ ۝

## Tajweed Rules: Rule of Laam in Allah

## Al-Tarteel Lesson #4

- <http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-4>

## Rule of Laam Mushaddad (Hardened Laam)

There are two kinds of Laam Mushaddad:

1. Laam Mushaddad in the divine name of Allah. Mushaddad Laam in the word ALLAH is called **Laam-ul-Jalalah**.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ - بَلِ اللَّهُ - شَاءَ اللَّهُ - يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ -  
اللَّهُمَّ مَالِكِ الْمُلْكِ

2. Laam Mushaddad other than the name of Allah:

خُلَّةٌ - الَّذِي - إِلَّا - خَلَّافٍ

## Rule of Laam Jalalah

Pay attention to the **thick** and **thin** sounds of Laam

Laam-ul-Jalalah will be pronounced with a **thick** sound when it is preceded by a letter having **Fathah** or **Dhammah**.

إِنَّ اللَّهَ - حُدُودُ اللَّهِ - قَالُوا اللَّهُمَّ

Laam-ul-Jalalah will be pronounced with a **thin** sound when it is preceded by a letter having **Kasrah**.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ - الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ - أَفِي اللَّهِ

## Enrichment: Holy Qur'an Research

### Guidelines for Holy Qur'an Enrichment Section

- This section is **NOT** for testing purposes, but is designed to show that the Holy Qur'an is a living document that supports us in our every day life.
- The goal of these topics of discussion is exactly that: discussion! You may not agree on an answer, but the goal is a deeper understanding.
- Your classroom is a safe space and honest comments are welcome.
- Respect silence during discussions as this can be an indication of a deeper thought process.
- Sitting in a group style rather than a classroom style setting may help.
- Your teacher is there to help moderate your discussion. No questions are bad and if your teacher needs, they can refer to a murrabi to help obtain answers to your questions.
- Approximate timings of each section should help you stay on track.  
Research: 15 minutes  
Discuss: 20 minutes  
Reflect: 5 minutes

To search up key words, use <https://www.alislam.org/Our'an/app/>

Hint: Under the "Settings" tab, you can turn on the Five-Volume Commentary for better search results.

**Exercise 1.4: Research**

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search for the concepts of:

1. **Vanity**
2. **Modesty**
3. **Privacy**

Think about how these larger concepts in relation to social media, purdah, arrogance, and boasting. Then have a discussion based on the questions below.

**Discuss**

- How do you define social media and its purpose? Can you see how vanity, modesty, and privacy are impacted by our presence on social media?
- Define vanity and self-centeredness. Does social media make us more or less susceptible to these vices?<sup>1</sup>
- Why do you think social media affects teen girls more than teen boys?<sup>2</sup>

**Reflect**

1. It is impossible to pretend that social media does not exist. However, the Holy Qur'an helps us identify the subtle indiscretions that lead down slippery slopes and greater sins.
2. Qur'anic injunctions teach us clearly about modesty and safeguarding our privacy and that of others. Keep these in mind as you find yourself scrolling through your feed and posting online. Remember, you're not just accountable for what you post but also for what you see and hear.
3. Remember the hadith, "Actions are judged by intentions." So be honest with yourself about what you hope to achieve when posting, whether on Snapchat, LinkedIn, or Instagram.

1 <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2016/mar/17/i-narcissist-vanity-social-media-and-the-human-condition>

2 <https://www.wsj.com/articles/facebook-knows-instagram-is-toxic-for-teen-girls-company-documents-show-11631620739>

## Gossip

### Exercise 1.5: Research

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search up the concepts of:

1. **Suspicious**
2. **Confer in secret**
3. **Deride (ridicule)**

Think about how these larger concepts shape your understanding of reputations, gossip, and how we form opinions about those around us. Then have a discussion based on the questions below.

### Discuss

- Why do people enjoy gossiping so much? What sort of repercussions have you seen from the spreading of rumors from gossip in your school/friends?
- How would the world change if people became more aware of the impact of their own words?
- How would your conversations need to change in order to avoid the pitfalls of gossip, idle chit-chat, and rumors?

### Reflect

1. Think about how click bait works. It is meant to pique your curiosity and cause you to click on something that is likely harmful or useless. Learn to identify the real-life "click-baits" in your life.
2. While back-biting may seem like a passing, harmless comment, its effects are far-reaching. Misunderstanding, fights, and a lower standard of your own morality are all at stake in the long term.
3. Words matter. While most people think gossip is just harmless talk, they should remember the words of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>: "Whoever can guarantee me they will watch over what is between their jaw bones (tongues) and their (private parts), I will guarantee them paradise."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> <https://sunnah.com/bukhari.6474>)



## Promoting a Simpler Life

**Exercise 1.6: Research**

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search the concepts of:

1. **Extravagance**
2. **Miserliness**

Think about how these larger concepts effect the way people covet luxury, make purchases, and the concept of retail "therapy". Then have a discussion based on the questions below.

**Discuss**

- What are some examples of extravagant spending you have seen?
- What thought process lies behind extravagant spending? Why do we covet things which we can not afford?
- Does Islam wish for its followers to be miserly or extravagant?

**Reflect**

1. Think about this: Forty-nine percent of Americans say emotions have caused them to spend more than they can reasonably afford. Younger adults are more likely to say they overspend due to emotions than older adults.<sup>1</sup>
2. The urge to make more and more money and covet more and more things comes about when one tries to emulate what others have. Extravagance leads the way into a life of ostentatious (showing off) and pride.
3. The Islamic way of spending is "And those who, when they spend, are neither extravagant nor stingy, but adopt a moderate position in the middle."<sup>2</sup>

1 <https://www.nerdwallet.com/article/credit-cards/credit-card-debt-stigma-2017>

2 The Holy Qur'an 25:68

## Blessings of the Holy Qur'an

### Exercise 1.7: Research

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search up the concepts of:

1. **Qur'an**
2. **Guidance**
3. **Book**
4. **Recite**

Think about these larger concepts in relation to daily recitation of the Holy Qur'an, using it as a guidebook, and what personal topics of interest may be contained within it for you. Then have a discussion based on the questions below.

### Discuss

- What are the benefits of reciting/reading the Holy Qur'an? Name a few.
- Do you find the Holy Qur'an at odds with science? Why or why not?
- Does the Qur'an encourage its readers to be critical thinkers? In other words, are you asked to reflect and relate to its contents by God?

### Reflect

1. Hadrat Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> said, "The most honorable people in his ummah are those who memorize the Qur'an". Remember that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> himself was the first to memorize the verses as they were revealed. A noble sunnah to follow, indeed!
2. The Holy Qur'an not only supports learning and philosophy, it draws attention to the natural sciences in support and illustration of spiritual truths. This emphasizes the relationship between nature and spiritual truth.
3. The Holy Qur'an being the very word of God is alive, and dynamic like the universe, and the guidance that it provides keeps pace with the changing pattern of human life. Keep this in mind when you are looking for direction or answers. Your answers may be in the Book!



# Salat and Prayers

## Quranic Surahs

### Surah Al-Baqarah (Verses 9-17)

In the Name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

9. And of the people there are some who say, 'We believe in Allah and the Last Day,' while they are not believers at all.

10. They would deceive Allah and those who believe, and they deceive none but themselves; only they perceive it not.

11. In their hearts was a disease, and Allah has increased their disease to them; and for them is a grievous punishment because they lied.

12. And when it is said to them: 'Create not disorder on the earth,' they say: 'We are only promoters of peace.'

13. Beware! it is surely they who create disorder, but they do not perceive it.

14. And when it is said to them, 'Believe as other people have believed,' they say: 'Shall we believe as the foolish have believed?' Beware! it is surely they that are foolish, but they do not know.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝۱

وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَن یَقُولُ اٰمَنَّا بِاللّٰهِ وَ  
بِالْیَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ وَ مَا هُمْ بِمُؤْمِنِیْنَ ۝۹

یُخٰدِعُوْنَ اللّٰهَ وَ الَّذِیْنَ اٰمَنُوْا ۚ وَ مَا  
یَخٰدِعُوْنَ اِلَّا اَنْفُسَهُمْ وَ مَا یَشْعُرُوْنَ ۝۱۰

فِیْ قُلُوْبِهِمْ مَّرَضٌ فَزَادَهُمُ اللّٰهُ مَرَضًا ۚ  
وَ لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ اَلِیْمٌ ۙ بِمَا كَانُوْا  
یَكْذِبُوْنَ ۝۱۱

وَ اِذَا قِیْلَ لَهُمْ لَا تُفْسِدُوْا فِی الْاَرْضِ ۙ  
قَالُوْا اِنَّمَا نَحْنُ مُصْلِحُوْنَ ۝۱۲

اِلَّا اِنَّهُمْ هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُوْنَ وَ لٰكِن لَّا  
یَشْعُرُوْنَ ۝۱۳

وَ اِذَا قِیْلَ لَهُمْ اٰمِنُوْا كَمَا اٰمَنَ النَّاسُ  
قَالُوْا اَنْتُمْ مِّنْ كَمَا اٰمَنَ السُّفَهَاءُ ۗ اِلَّا  
اِنَّهُمْ هُمُ السُّفَهَاءُ وَ لٰكِن لَّا یَعْلَمُوْنَ ۝۱۴

15. And when they meet those who believe, they say: 'We believe,' but when they are alone with their ringleaders, they say: 'We are certainly with you; we are only mocking.'

وَإِذَا لَقُوا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا قَالُوا آمَنَّا ۖ وَإِذَا خَلَوْا إِلَىٰ شَيَاطِينِهِمْ قَالُوا إِنَّا مَعَكُمْ ۖ إِنَّمَا نَحْنُ مُسْتَهْزِءُونَ ﴿١٥﴾

16. Allah will punish their mockery and will let them continue in their transgression, wandering blindly.

اللَّهُ يَسْتَهْزِئُ بِهِمْ وَيَمُدَّهُمْ فِي طُغْيَانِهِمْ يَعْمَهُونَ ﴿١٦﴾

17. These are they who have taken error in exchange for guidance; but their traffic has brought them no gain, nor are they rightly guided.

أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ اشْتَرُوا الضَّلَالََةَ بِالْهُدَىٰ ۖ فَمَا رَبِحَتْ تِجَارَتُهُمْ وَمَا كَانُوا مُهْتَدِينَ ﴿١٧﴾

Surah Al-Baqarah is the longest chapter of the Holy Qur'an, and it was revealed in Medina. In these verses, Allah talks about a group of people who are hypocrites (people who pretend, lie or deceive). The hypocrites say that they believe in Allah, the Day of the Judgment, and the truth of Islam, but they do not. They only join the group of believers for their political and social benefits.

As we know, faith is based upon truth and sincerity, and Allah knows what is in the hearts of men. We cannot hide anything from Him. Allah tells us that those people whose hearts are suffering from the disease of hypocrisy do not behave as they should. They try to create disorder by spreading rumors against each other or encouraging non-Muslims to fight against Muslims and then blaming Muslims for that disorder.

When the believers ask the hypocrites to be sincere in their faith, they say that the believers are fools who are wasting their lives and properties. Allah gives chances for hypocrites to reform themselves but unfortunately, they do not change, and instead they grow in their transgression. Hypocrites and their leaders reject Allah's guidance and choose the path of error repeatedly. This rejection brings them misery and suffering.

**Exercise 2.1: Memorize the Arabic and translation of these verses of Surah Al-Baqarah.**





**Ayat-ul-Kursi (Surah Al-Baqarah, v. 256)**

In the Name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

Allah – there is no God but He, the Living, the Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining. Slumber seizes Him not, nor sleep. To Him belongs whatsoever is in the heavens and whatsoever is in the earth. Who is he that will intercede with Him except by His permission? He knows what is before them and what is behind them; and they encompass nothing of His knowledge except what He pleases. His knowledge extends over the heavens and the earth; and the care of them burdens Him not; and He is the High, the Great.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ①  
 اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ ۚ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّومُ ۚ  
 لَا تَأْخُذُهُ سِنَّةٌ وَلَا نَوْمٌ ۗ  
 لَهُ مَا فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَمَا فِي الْأَرْضِ ۗ  
 مَنْ ذَا الَّذِي يَشْفَعُ عِنْدَهُ إِلَّا بِإِذْنِهِ ۗ  
 يَعْلَمُ مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ ۗ  
 وَلَا يُحِيطُونَ بِشَيْءٍ مِّنْ عِلْمِهِ إِلَّا  
 بِمَا شَاءَ ۗ وَسِعَ كُرْسِيُّهُ السَّمَوَاتِ  
 وَالْأَرْضَ ۗ وَلَا يَئُودُهُ حِفْظُهُمَا ۗ  
 وَهُوَ الْعَلِيُّ الْعَظِيمُ ①

**Commentary of Ayat-ul-Kursi**

This verse is known as **Ayat-ul-Kursi**, meaning throne or a chair. It beautifully describes the unity of God and His great attributes. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> is reported to have said that the Ayat-ul-Kursi is the loftiest verse of the Holy Qur'an (*Sahih Muslim*).

This verse answers the question of whether or not God exists. It tells us that the world is not without a Master. The destinies of its people are controlled by a Being Whose power is limitless, Whose knowledge knows no bounds, Who is Ever Vigilant, Ever Watchful, in Whose Hands are the entire resources of the heavens and the earth.

Allah knows the secrets of men's hearts as His knowledge is unlimited while knowledge of others is limited; hence there can be no intercession except by His permission, for He alone knows who is deserving of it. In short, Allah has control of the heavens and earth.

**Exercise 2.2: Memorize the Ayat-ul-Kursi with translation.**

**Exercise 2.3: Answer the questions below.**

**What does 'Kursi" mean?**

-----

**What question does this verse answer?**

-----

-----

**Exercise 2.4: Word Search**



- BELONGS   ENCOMPASS   SUSTAINING   PERMISSION   KNOWLEDGE
- HEAVENS   SLUMBER   INTERCEDE   LIVING   PLEASES   ALLAH
- GREAT   BURDEN   LIVING   HIGH   EARTH

**Translation of Surah Al-Falaq**

In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

Say, I seek refuge in the Lord of the dawn,

From the evil of that which He has created,

And from the evil of darkness when it overspreads,

And from the evil of those who blow upon the knots of mutual relationships to undo them,

And from the evil of the envier when he envies.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ①

قُلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْفَلَقِ ②

مِنْ شَرِّ مَا خَلَقَ ③

وَ مِنْ شَرِّ غَاسِقٍ إِذَا وَقَبَ ④

وَ مِنْ شَرِّ النَّفَّاثَاتِ فِي الْعُقَدِ ⑤

وَ مِنْ شَرِّ حَاسِدٍ إِذَا حَسَدَ ⑥

**Exercise 2.5: Memorize the translation of Surah Al-Falaq.**

**Exercise 2.6: Unscramble the words from the translation of this surah.**

- |                |       |                  |       |
|----------------|-------|------------------|-------|
| 1. uegrfe      | _____ | 6. matluu        | _____ |
| 2. wnda        | _____ | 7. nphotelsisair | _____ |
| 3. leiv        | _____ | 8. lwob          | _____ |
| 4. andesrks    | _____ | 9. ynev          | _____ |
| 5. poesvsrdaer | _____ | 10. stonk        | _____ |

**Exercise 2.7: Using the translation above, circle True or False for the statements below.**

We should ask Allah to protect us from jealous people.	True	False
Good and evil both exist in the world.	True	False
Falaq means the dawn.	True	False
A breakdown of relationships can occur through misunderstandings, and so we should pray that Allah protect our relationships.	True	False



**Exercise 2.8: Fill in the blanks using the words in the word bank.**

113    SIX    THE LORD OF THE DAWN  
GOOD    EVIL    ALLAH

Including Tasmiyah, Surah Al-Falaq has \_\_\_\_\_ verses.

In this surah, when seeking Allah's help we call Him by His attribute,

\_\_\_\_\_.

In this surah, we are warned that \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ live together in this world.

Only \_\_\_\_\_ can protect us from all types of evil.

Surah Al-Falaq is chapter number \_\_\_\_\_ of the Holy Qur'an.

**Exercise 2.9: Discuss the translation of Surah Al-Falaq in class and answer the questions below.**

**What does the word refuge mean?**

- a. Shelter or protection
- b. Courtesy or honor

**What kind of harm or evil does this surah talk about?**

- a. Doubt, fear, misunderstanding
- b. Wars and social inequity

**How can we save ourselves from the harm mentioned in this surah?**

- a. By looking for Allah's protection
- b. By saving money

**Translation of Surah An-Nās**

In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ①

Say, 'I seek refuge in the Lord of mankind,

قُلْ اَعُوْذُ بِرَبِّ النَّاسِ ②

'The King of mankind,

مَلِكِ النَّاسِ ③

'The God of mankind,

اِلٰهِ النَّاسِ ④

'From the evil whisperings of the sneaking whisperer;

مِنۡ شَرِّ الْوَسْوَاسِ الْخَنَّاسِ ⑤

'Who whispers into the hearts of men,

الَّذِیْ یُوسْوِسُ فِیۡ صُدُوْرِ النَّاسِ ⑥

'From among jinn and men.'

مِنَ الْجِنَّةِ وَ النَّاسِ ⑦

**Exercise 2.10: Memorize the translation of Surah An-Nās.**

**Exercise 2.11: Unscramble the words from the translation of this surah.**

- |                |       |              |       |
|----------------|-------|--------------|-------|
| 1. uegrfe      | _____ | 6. kisnange  | _____ |
| 2. drlo        | _____ | 7. eashrt    | _____ |
| 3. ngik        | _____ | 8. nnji      | _____ |
| 4. kdinnma     | _____ | 9. cirusaog  | _____ |
| 5. wringpesshi | _____ | 10. eclmirfu | _____ |

## Funeral Prayer

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِحَيِّنَا وَمَيِّتِنَا وَشَاهِدِنَا  
 وَغَائِبِنَا وَصَغِيرِنَا وَكَبِيرِنَا وَذَكَرِنَا وَأُنثَانَا  
 اللَّهُمَّ مَنْ أَحْيَيْتَهُ مِنَّا فَأَحْيِهِ عَلَى الْإِسْلَامِ ط  
 وَمَنْ تَوَفَّيْتَهُ مِنَّا فَتَوَفَّهُ عَلَى الْإِيمَانِ ط  
 اللَّهُمَّ لَا تَحْرِمْنَا أَجْرَهُ وَلَا تَفْتِنَّا بَعْدَهُ

*Al-laa-hum-magh-fir li-hay-yi-naa wa may-yi-ti-naa wa shaa-hi-di-naa wa ghaa-'i-bi-naa wa sa-ghee-ri-naa wa ka-bee-ri-naa wa dha-ka-ri-naa wa un-thaa-naa.*

*Al-laa-hum-ma man ah-yai-ta-hoo min-naa fa-ah-yi-hee 'a-lal-is-laam wa man ta-waf-fai-ta-hoo min-naa fa-ta-waf-fa-hoo 'a-lal-eemaan. Al-laa-hum-ma laa tah-rim-naa aj-ra-hoo wa laa taf-tin-naa ba'-dah.*

Translation: O Allah! Forgive our living ones and our deceased ones; and those of us who are present and those of us who are absent; and our young ones and our old ones; and our males and our females.

O Allah! Those of us whom You grant life, keep them firm on Islam; and those of us whom You cause to die, cause them to die in faith. Deprive us not, O Allah, of the benefits relating to him (the deceased) and subject us not to trials after him.

When a Muslim passes away, other Muslims must offer his or her funeral prayer. After bathing, the body is wrapped in clean, white sheets, known as a **shroud**. For men, **three** sheets are used. One for the lower half of the body, one for the upper half, and one large sheet which covers the body from head to toe. For women, **two additional** pieces of cloth are used; one to cover the chest and one to cover the head. The body is then carried to the place where the Janazah (funeral) Prayer is to be performed. The funeral Prayer is held in the open or in a place built for that purpose called **Janazah Gah**. It can also be held in any mosque.

Those who are present for the funeral service should arrange themselves in rows behind the Imam. The rows should be **odd** in number, if possible since this was the sunnah of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. The Imam stands in the center of the first row, with the body resting in front of him. The position of the dead body should be such that the right side of the body should be towards the Ka`bah.



1. The Imam commences the Prayer by saying—"Allahu Akbar" (Allah is the Greatest) loudly.
2. The followers silently repeat the Takbir, and the Imam recites Thana and Surah Al-Fatihah silently.
3. He then says "Allahu Akbar" for the second time, without raising his hands.
4. Then, the whole congregation recites Durud Sharif silently.
5. The Imam says "Allahu Akbar" for the third time. This is when the funeral prayer is recited by everyone silently.

In the case of a deceased male or female child, the preceding prayer is replaced by:

#### Male child

اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْهُ لَنَا سَلْفًا وَفَرَطًا وَذُخْرًا وَأَجْرًا وَشَافِعًا وَمُشَفَّعًا

*Al-laa-hum-maj-'al-hu la-naa sa-la-fan wa fa-ra-tan wa dhukh-ran wa aj-ran  
wa shaa-fi-'an wa mu-shuf-fa'aa*

Translation: O Allah! Make him for us a forerunner and a source of comfort, a treasure and a reward, and make him as a pleader and accept his pleading.

#### Female child

اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْهَا لَنَا سَلْفًا وَفَرَطًا وَذُخْرًا وَشَافِعَةً وَمُشَفَّعَةً

*Al-laa-hum-maj-'al-haa la-naa sa-la-fan wa fa-ra-tan wa dhukh-ran wa aj-ran  
wa shaa-fi-'a-tan wa mu-shaf-fa-'ah*

Translation: O Allah! Make her for us a forerunner and a source of comfort, a treasure and a reward, and make her as a pleader and accept her pleading.

6. The Imam then says "Allahu Akbar" for the fourth time and turning his face towards the right, says "As-Salamu Alaikum wa Rahmatullah," and turning

his face towards the left repeats the same to mark the end of the Prayer.

Remember that there are no **Ruku** or **Sajdah** in the funeral Prayer. The body is then buried in the cemetery. Those who can, should accompany the funeral procession to the cemetery and remain there until the body has been buried.

**Exercise 2.12: Memorize the funeral prayer in Arabic.**

**Exercise 2.13: Fill in the blanks.**

1. After bathing, the body of the deceased is wrapped in clean white sheets, known as a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The funeral Prayer is held in the \_\_\_\_\_ or in a place built for that purpose called a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. For the funeral Prayer, the body is placed in \_\_\_\_\_ of the Imam.
4. Everyone recites Durud Sharif when the Imam says Allahu Akbar for the \_\_\_\_\_ time.
5. O Allah! Forgive our \_\_\_\_\_ and our \_\_\_\_\_; and those of us who are \_\_\_\_\_ and those of us who are \_\_\_\_\_; and our \_\_\_\_\_ and our old ones; and our \_\_\_\_\_ and our \_\_\_\_\_.
6. O Allah! Those of us whom You grant \_\_\_\_\_, keep them firm on \_\_\_\_\_; and those of us whom You cause to \_\_\_\_\_, cause them to die in \_\_\_\_\_.
7. There are \_\_\_\_\_ rukus and \_\_\_\_\_ sajdahs in the funeral Prayer.

## Prayers

## Seeking Allah's Protection

يَا حَفِيظُ يَا عَزِيْزُ يَا رَفِيْقُ-

*Yaa ha-fee-zu yaa `a-zee-zu yaa ra-feeq*

Translation: O Protector! O Mighty! O Kind God! (I seek Your protection, Your support and Your friendship). (Tadhkirah)

**Exercise 2.14: Memorize this prayer of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> that asks for Allah's protection and its translation.**

## Achieving Allah's Blessings

رَبِّ اِنِّي لِمَا اَنْزَلْتَ اِلَيَّ مِنْ خَيْرٍ فَقِيْرٌ

*Rab-bi 'in-nee li-maa an-zal-ta i-lay-ya min khair-in fa-qeer*

Translation: My Lord, a beggar I am in need of whatever good Thou bestows on me. (28:25)

The Holy Qur'an says that Allah, the All-Knowing, knows what is good for us. This prayer teaches us to leave everything to Allah and ask Him to provide us with whatever He thinks is best for us. Sometimes we become sad when our prayers are seemingly not accepted. Perhaps it is in Allah's plan not to accept the prayer in the way we want, not because we are not pious, but because He knows that it is not good for us. So, we should always be happy with whatever Allah decides. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> gives an example of this very dilemma. He states that if a child wanted to place his hand in the fire, a mother would let the child cry, but she would never let him put his hand in the fire because she knows that it would hurt him. Similarly, we may be praying for something that we think is good for us, but Allah knows if it actually is good for us or not, and because of this knowledge, He chooses to either accept or not accept our prayers.



**Exercise 2.15: Memorize the prayer to achieve Allah's blessings and its translation.**

**Exercise 2.16: Unscramble the words related to this prayer.**

H L A L A

-----

O G O D

-----

D E E N

-----

D L O R

-----

L E B S G I N S

-----

R B E A G G

-----

D E V I O P R

-----

Y P A R E R

-----

E R W H T A V E

-----









# Basics of Islam

## Hadith

### Against Backbiting

الْغَيْبَةُ أَشَدُّ مِنَ الْقَتْلِ-

*Al-ghee-ba-tu a-shad-du mi-nal-qatl*

Translation: Backbiting is worse than killing.

Backbiting means speaking ill of someone who is absent and therefore, unable to defend himself against what is being said about him. Treating other people with integrity and respect is a sign of a believer. It is not permissible for a Muslim to spread rumors, gossip or engage in backbiting of another person.

In the Holy Qur'an, Allah says,

"O ye who believe! Avoid most of suspicions; for suspicion in some cases is a sin. And spy not, nor backbite one another. Would any of you like to eat the flesh of his brother who is dead? Certainly, you would loath it. And fear Allah, surely, Allah is Oft-Returning with compassion and is Merciful." (49:13)

In our daily life, backbiting and gossip remain the main causes of the destruction of personal relationships. They destroy friendships and families and fuel mistrust among community members. Islam guides us on how to deal with our human tendency towards gossip and backbiting.

This is how we can avoid backbiting:

- Keep in mind that Allah sees and knows everything.
- Nobody is perfect; we all are lacking in some way.
- Recognize that Satan seeks to fuel doubt and mistrust among believers.
- Speak well or keep quiet. The Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> said, "One can greatly beautify himself with two habits-good manners and lengthy silence." On another occasion, he said, "Let the one who believes in Allah and the Hereafter utter good words or let him be silent."
- If you hear a rumor about someone's misfortune, strive for compassion rather than continuing the gossip. Remind others not to gossip, and if they



don't listen, walk away.

- Avoid prying into others' affairs, as this fuels gossip, misinformation and creates a climate of mistrust.
- Allow grace for the mistakes of others. If a person does something that you think is wrong somehow, try to look at the situation from their perspective. By being empathetic, you will be less likely to harbor or spread negativity.
- Ask Allah for His forgiveness for any mistakes you make, and then seek the forgiveness of the person you hurt.

**Exercise 3.1: Memorize the hadith against backbiting and its translation.**

**Persistence in Prayers**

تَرْكُ الدُّعَاءِ مَعْصِيَةٌ

*Tar-kud-du-`aa-`i ma`-si-yah*

Translation: It is a sin to abandon praying.

Persistence means continuously doing something, even when it appears to be useless or difficult. Abandon means to leave or stop doing something. This hadith tells us that Allah always hears our prayers. Sometimes when we pray for things, which are not suitable for us, Allah decides not to accept our requests. You may think at such a point that Allah has not heard you and has denied you your prayer. However, this far from the truth. When Allah denies a prayer, it may be because He knows that there will be some adverse consequences of what we are asking.

Therefore, even when we feel hopeless, and it seems that Allah is not listening we must not stop praying. If we stop, that means we think Allah does not know what is good for us. It means that we think we know better than Allah.

Ceaseless prayers demonstrate our trust in Allah. Remaining steadfast in prayers also give us the chance to become closer to Allah and ask Him for His help in everything. Allah protects us from evil, and we also become stronger and prosperous in our lives.



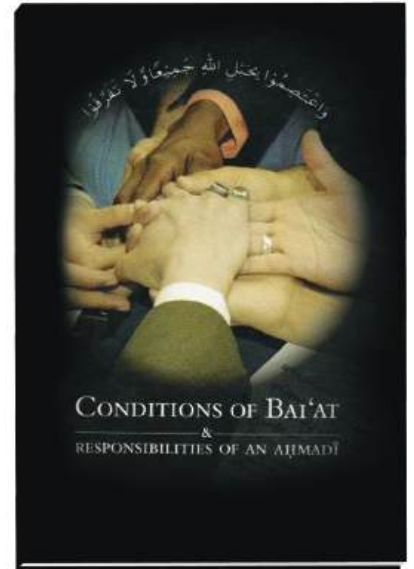
**Exercise 3.2: Memorize the hadith about persistence in prayers and its translation.**

## Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi

*Note: Please have students read the actual course book "Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi" for full understanding of the concepts. The online book can be found here: <https://www.alislam.org/library/books/Conditions-of-Baiat-Responsibilities-of-Ahmadi.pdf>*

### Introduction

When the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> claimed that he was the awaited messiah, he invited all righteous souls to join him. He then published the **ten conditions of Bai'at** for all who wished to pledge their allegiance to him and the revival of Islam.



**Exercise 3.3: Answer the questions below with reference to the passages in the book. Page numbers from the course book are provided.**

**What is the literal meaning of the word "Bai'at"? (page 4)**

-----

**Why did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> wait to begin taking the Bai'at of those who wished to follow him? (pages 8-10)**

-----

-----

**Where and when did the first Bai'at take place? (page 12)**

-----

-----

**Who was the first person to take the Bai'at at the hands of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>? (page 12)**

-----

**Condition 1**

That he/she shall abstain from Shirk (association of any partner with God) right up to the day of his/her death.

**Condition 2**

That he/she shall keep away from falsehood, fornication, adultery, trespasses of the eye, debauchery, dissipation, cruelty, dishonesty, mischief and rebellion; and will not permit himself/herself to be carried away by passions, however strong they might be.

**Exercise 3.4: Answer the questions with reference to the passages in the book. Page numbers from the course book are provided.**

**What is Shirk? (page 17)**

- a. Associating partners with Allah
- b. An unforgiveable sin
- c. Being proud & showing off
- d. All of the above

**Identify and define the nine sins mentioned in Condition #2? (page 21)**

1.	6.
2.	7.
3.	8.
4.	9.
5.	

**What is Ghadd Basar? (page 29)**

- a. An intention of modesty
- b. Keeping the eyes cast down
- c. Carrying yourself with a pure intent
- d. All of the above

**Discuss: Why is modesty prescribed for both men and women?**



## Tarbiyat Topics

### Love of Allah

Allah is the Creator of the universe. He showers countless blessings on us: good health, loving parents, delicious food, and so many more. Unfortunately, we take these blessings for granted and don't thank Allah enough for His favors.



When we love someone, we try to do everything in our power to make them happy and avoid all those things which will destroy our relationship. Allah created us to worship Him. We should all ask Allah to grant us His love. Love of God is willingness to sacrifice everything for His sake.

In the Holy Qur'an Allah says:

"Say, if you love Allah, then follow me (The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>), then Allah will love you and forgive you your sins. And Allah is the Most Forgiving and The Merciful." (3:32)

This verse teaches us that true and burning love of God and the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> results in a meeting between God and man. He who loves God and the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> is beloved of God. True love of God, therefore, is a sign of truth and sincerity.

In a Persian poem, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> beautifully summarizes the emotion and feeling of a true lover and supplicant of Allah.

*Do not mention kings to me,  
For I have placed my hopes at another threshold.  
The Lord God, Who has granted life to the universe,  
He is the Originator, the Creator, the Sustainer.  
The Generous, All-Powerful, Reliever of problems,  
The Merciful, the Compassionate, Who fulfills all needs.  
(Ruhani Khaza'in, Vol. 12, p. 149)*

This is how we can practice our love for Allah:

- Worship Allah alone
- Ponder upon the blessings of Allah

- Read the Holy Qur'an and reflect on its teachings
- Perform acts which bring us closer to Allah
- Stay away from sins and ask Allah for His forgiveness
- Reflect on the beautiful names of Allah
- Follow the Sunnah of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>

**Exercise 3.5: Complete the short answer questions below.**

**Why do we need to love Allah?**

-----

-----

-----

**How can we acquire the love of Allah?**

-----

-----

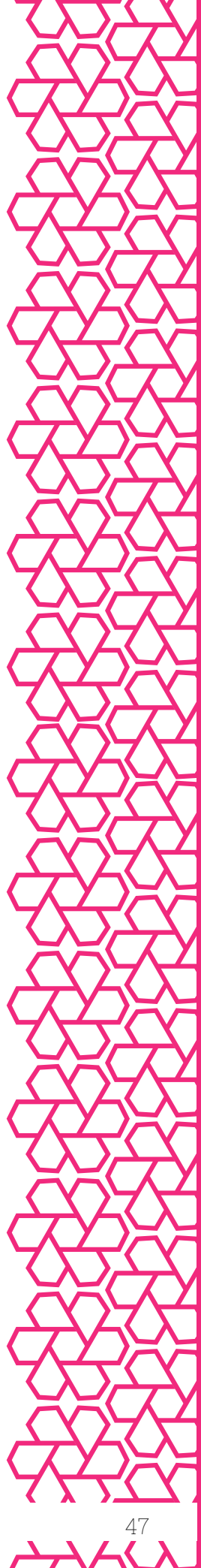
-----

**Find and discuss a hadith related to this topic.**

-----

-----

-----



## Loyalty to Country

*"Love for one's nation is a part of faith."*

*(Sakhawi; Safinat-ul-Bihar)*

Islam requires every Muslim to be loyal to his country – regardless of the ruler's faith. The Holy Qur'an states, "O ye who believe, obey Allah and obey the Prophet and obey those in authority from among you" (4:60).



In Islam, therefore, loyalty first belongs to God and obedience to other authority being derived from Him. A sovereign may demand obedience from his constituency because he is responsible for them. Obedience to such a sovereign fall under obedience to God. Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> declared,

"Whoso obeys the ruler obeys me, and whoso disobeys the ruler disobeys me" (Muslim); "Listen to and obey your ruler, even if you [despise him]" (Bukhari).

In the light of the ahadith mentioned above, the definition and true meaning of love and loyalty, is the fulfilment of one's pledges at every level and under all circumstances, regardless of difficulty. This is the true standard of faithfulness required by Islam.

This is how we can practice love for our country:

- Loyalty to one's nation is an integral part of the Atfal and Nasirat pledges. Children must always be ready to serve their country and nation in every way possible.
- Follow all the laws of the country.
- Never participate in any activity which hurts our country.
- Remember Allah has forbidden all forms of treachery or rebellion, whether they are against one's country or government, because this threatens the peace and security of the nation.
- Do not protest if you don't agree with government, instead write or talk to lawmakers to resolve the situation peacefully.
- Choose the best possible leaders for your country.

In Chapter 4, verse 59 of the Holy Qur'an, Allah has commanded that a person should only hand over trust to those who are entitled, and that when judging between people, he should make his decision with justice and honesty. Thus, loyalty to one's nation requires that the power of the government should be given to those who are truly entitled to it, so that the nation can progress and come to stand at the forefront amongst the nations of the world.

Speaking about the importance of loyalty and love for one's nation Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> said, "Ahmadi Muslims must desire and work towards



the betterment of the country in which they live in. They must always adhere to and respect the local laws. Whenever a country requires a sacrifice, Ahmadi Muslims will always be ready to bear such sacrifice for the sake of their nation.”

**Exercise 3.6: Write in short answers to the questions below.**

**Why does Islam stress on love for one’s nation?**

-----

-----

**How can we express our love for our nation?**

-----

-----

-----

**What instructions are given in the Holy Qur’an regarding choosing a leader?**

-----

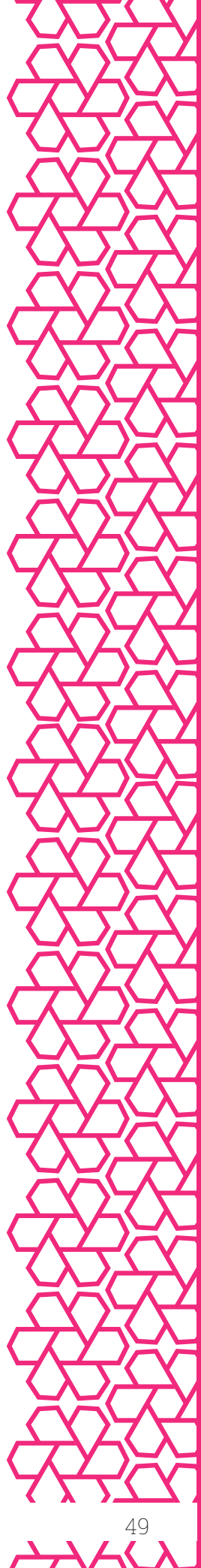
-----

-----

**What should we do if we disagree with our government?**

-----

-----



## Tarbiyat Stories

### Delhi is Still Far Away

*Kings do not matter to the ones who have found God.*

Prophets, though, are at quite a different level— even their servants and slaves achieve such a status that kings are rendered insignificant before them. Nizam-ud-Din Auliya, a saint from Delhi, was the sage of many saints. Through him, enlightenment spread far and wide in India. A king of the Tughlaq Dynasty ruled India at that time. An action of Nizam-ud-Din Auliya annoyed the king. The king was about to embark on a journey. So, he said that he would punish Nizam-ud-Din Auliya after his return from journey. This news worried the followers of Nizam-ud-Din Auliya. Their worries increased as the king started his journey back to Delhi. They suggested that an effort for conciliation should be undertaken before the king arrives back. Nizam-ud-Din Auliya responded, “All is in the hands of God. I cannot do much. God will act as He wills.” When the king had proceeded further, the followers became even more alarmed. They told him again that now there is only a very short distance to cover. He replied, “Do not worry, Delhi is still far away.” Finally, the king reached very close to Delhi. It has been a tradition of the Muslim kings not to enter the city at night. As a matter of fact, it was the tradition of the Revered Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and the kings acted upon it. Therefore, as the king arrived near the city, he stayed outside the city, and an announcement was made that the king planned to enter the city the following day. The anxious followers again said that the king was about to enter the city. He responded again, “Delhi is still far away.” As the daylight spread, his devout followers became extremely worried about the wrath of the king on arrival in the city. But instead the news came that the king had suddenly died in some accident. So, the king’s body entered the city in his place. Therefore, even the kings are insignificant against the beloved ones of Allah. Only those find true happiness who have a relationship with the Almighty.

### Exercise 3.7: What is the lesson learned from this story?

---



---

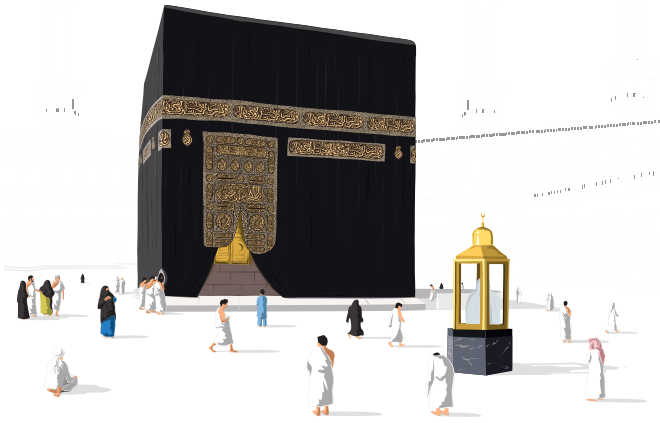


---

## The Cobbler's Hajj

A man named Abd-Allah lived in Mecca and had the honor of performing the pilgrimage. After the Hajj was over, one night he had a dream in which he saw two angels speaking to each other.

The first angel asked, "How many pilgrims have come this year?" The second angel replied, "Six hundred thousand." The first angel then asked, "How many have had their hajj accepted?" The second angel replied, "Not a single one."



When Abd-Allah heard this, he was filled with fear and began to tremble. "What?" he cried, "all these people have come from so far; from distant ends of the earth and with great pain and weariness from every deep ravine, traversing wide deserts and all their labour is in vain?"

Abd-Allah asked, "Who is this person?". The angel said, "There is a cobbler in Damascus called Ali ibn Mowaffaq. He did not come to the pilgrimage, but his Hajj has been accepted and all of his sins have been forgiven".

Upon hearing this, Abd-Allah woke up and thought he must go to Damascus and visit this man. So he traveled far from Mecca to the Syrian capital of Damascus. Once there, he searched the city looking for this man, whose pilgrimage Allah had accepted without even traveling to Mecca.

When he finally found the man named Ali ibn Mowaffaq, Abd-Allah asked him, "What work do you do?". Ali replied, "I cobbles shoes". When Abd-Allah heard this, he went on to relay his dream to this man. He was desperate to know what this man had done to have gained Allah's acceptance without having even left his city.

The man went on to relay his story. He said, "For thirty long years, I have longed to go for Hajj. I had saved up three hundred and fifty dirhams from cobbling shoes all year long. This year, I had resolved that I would finally make my pilgrimage to Mecca. One day, my wife smelled some meat being cooked by our next door neighbor and asked if I would go to our neighbor's house and ask for some of their delicious smelling food. I went and knocked on my neighbor's door and explained that my wife was craving whatever she was cooking".

“The woman hesitated at first and then broke down into tears. She was so embarrassed as she explained why she could not share her cooked meat with us. You see, her children had been starving for three days as they had nothing to eat in their house. In her desperation, she saw a donkey lying dead in the street and brought it home and cooked it to feed her children. The meat was permissible for her because of her unfortunate circumstance, but would not have been halal for me or my wife”. He continued, “My heart seemed to have caught on fire when I heard her story and saw her tears. I took out the three hundred and fifty dirhams and gave them to her right away. I told her, ‘Spend this money on your children, as this is my Hajj’”.

Abd-Allah was moved by this man’s story and declared, “The angels then spoke truly in my dream and the Heavenly King was true in His judgment”.

**Discussion Question**

- Consider this quote, “When helping the poor, leave the camera at home”. Why is humility the most important part of sacrifice?
- Why are intentions critical in our faith?
- Can we be sure that our good deeds are accepted and how does this affect the path of a true believer?

**Exercise 3.8: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

**Debate**

Hadrat Hakeem Maulana Nur-ud-Din<sup>ra</sup> used to say that he had a teacher named Maulawi Rahmatullah, who moved to Medina later in his life. Maulawi Rahmatullah was very pious and eminently devout, but he did not have much knowledge about the religion of Christianity. Once, a debate was arranged between him and Christians. His opponent was a clever and knowledgeable person while Maulawi Rahmatullah knew only the Qur'an and hadith. Being wise and intelligent, he said, "If I present Qur'an and hadith, my opponent will say, 'I do not believe in them.' My argument should be acceptable to my opponent too, but I am not aware of any." Finally, he said, "Why should we seek help from people and instead let us pray as we do not have much of a choice but to pray to God." He then occupied himself in prayer. At about eleven o'clock at night, someone knocked at his door. He opened the door. A man in a robe entered and said, "Tomorrow you are debating with that priest, I am also a priest, but, with regards to the unity of God, I consider you in the right. Therefore, I want you to note down some references because it is possible that you may not be aware of them." The mysterious priest dictated all the references to Maulawi Rahmatullah. When the debate took place the next day, the opposing priest was amazed by what was taking place in the debate that Maulawi Rahmatullah did not know any references, but he was citing Greek books at some place and Hebrew books at another, and he was also presenting English extracts. He was citing the unity of God from the Bible. In short, Maulawi Rahmatullah debated excellently and the opposing priest was defeated squarely. The stranger showed up in the same manner every night, dictated the citations, and in the morning, Maulawi Rahmatullah presented them forcefully. When a person stands up to do a good deed, Allah Himself moves the hearts of people, and people start supporting and aiding him.

**Exercise 3.9: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

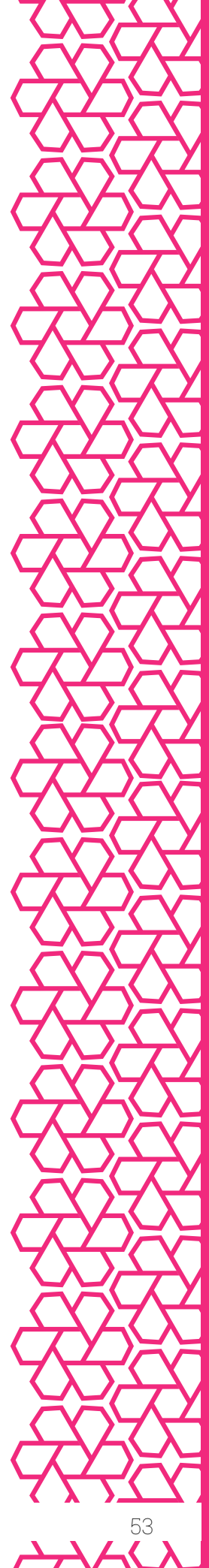
-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



### Old Lady's Wish

The Qur'an is the greatest wealth. How can a true Muslim like to see his home without this wealth? Hadrat Hakeem Maulana Nur-ud-Din<sup>ra</sup> used to relate that there was an elderly lady who was very pious. He used to visit her from time to time. Once he asked her, "Dear Lady, tell me if you need anything. I will get it for you." She said, "Son, I am in quite a comfort. I do not need anything." He used to say that he insisted, "You must need something." But each time she said, "I am comfortable. Every peace is here. There is no inconvenience." Then she elaborated, "We are a son and a mother only. Allah sends us two loaves of bread, morning and evening. I eat one and my son eats the other. We go to sleep on the same bed because we have only one blanket. When my side gets cold, I ask him to change side and he complies. So, that side too becomes warm. After a short while, when his side gets cold, he asks me to change my side, and I change my side, and he becomes comfortable. Therefore, we do not need anything." He used to relate that when he asked her persistently, "Please, let me know if you need anything." She said, "Due to my advanced age, my eyesight has become weak, and I cannot read comfortably the copy of the Qur'an I have because of the small writing. So, if you must give me something, give me a copy of the Qur'an printed in large font so that I may read it easily." For a believer, the greatest bounty is the Holy Qur'an.



**Exercise 3.10: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

---



---



---



---



---



---



## A Knock at the Door

The sign of a true friend is that he is ready to sacrifice everything for his friend and beloved. Imagine a beloved and a friend who is not only a beloved and a friend but also is the Creator, the Master, and the Lord.

A famous story states that a young man was in the habit of wasting his father's wealth on his friends all the time. He always had a gathering of flatterers and they wasted money day and night.

His father always told him, "They are flattering and selfish young men. They do not have real love for you. Do not destroy your wealth on them." But the young man never accepted his father's advice and responded, "They are my true friends."

The father said, "How come you have gathered so many friends around while I have been able to find only one close friend? How come there is a large gathering of friends around you all of the time?"

A long time passed, and the young man did not accept his father's advice. One day, the father said, "If you do not trust me then conduct a trial and test your friends, then you will know how many real friends you have."

The son asked, "How may I test my friends?". His father replied, "Go to every friend's home, and tell them that your father has evicted you from his house and has taken away your access to the property. Ask them to provide you with some money so that you may arrange some source of livelihood."

When he went to his friends' homes and told them that his father had evicted him, one sent a message out through a servant that he was sick and regretted that he could not meet him at that time. Some excused saying that they had the money but had given it to someone else just that day.

The young man returned home empty handed and said to his father that what his father had been saying was proven true; no one helped him.

The father said, "Let me show you my friend now."

The father took his son to the wilderness, and outside the town he reached a house, knocked on the door, and called out. There was a query from inside, "Who is it?"



The father announced his own name. The voice from the house said, "Okay."

Then there was silence without a response for half an hour.

The son said, "Your friend has proven to be like my friends."

The father said, "Do not be impatient; you will know soon why he has taken so long to come out."

A few minutes later, the father's friend came out holding his wife's hand. He had his scabbard fastened to his waist and had a sword in the other hand.

As he came out, he said, "Forgive me my friend, you came at midnight and I have been delayed since you knocked at the door. I assumed that your coming at midnight has some purpose in it. I thought, maybe you are in trouble and you have come to me for help. On this thought, I picked up my sword because that is what I would use to help you. Then I thought that although you are a billionaire, even billionaires can have financial problems and need any penny they can get. I had collected four to five hundred dollars penny by penny throughout my life and had buried them. I dug the ground and extracted that bag. I was further delayed on thinking that maybe your wife is not well and there may be some need to tend to her, so I awoke my wife and brought her with me. All these three things are at your disposal. How can we be of help?"

He said to his son, "Such ones are the friends."

This example bears a lesson in it: If a man's friend can be like this, then how should a friend of God be?

**Discussion Questions:**

- Which is better? A friend who plays with you everyday but isn't willing to help you when you really need or the one who you interact with less often, but is always there when needed?
- One of Allah's names is Al-Wali, The Best Friend. Why do you think that is? In what ways does Allah show His friendship to mankind?



**Exercise 3.11: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

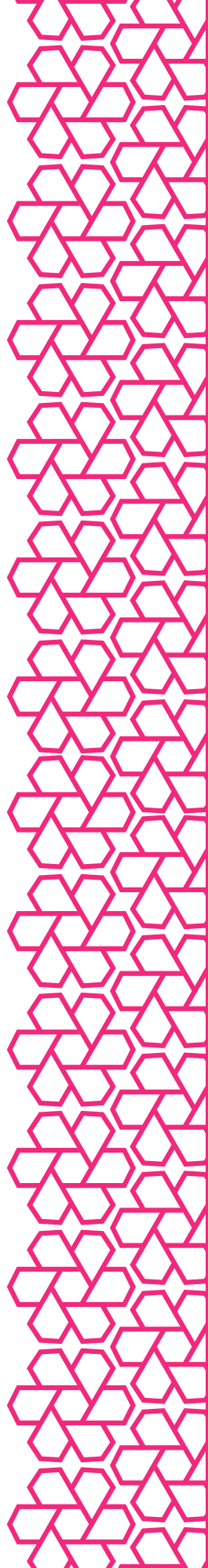
---

---

---

---

---







# History of Islam

## Life of Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> – Part I

### Family Background

**Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad of Qadian<sup>as</sup>**, the Founder of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Jamaat, belonged to a well-known Persian clan named Barlaas. Mirza Hadi Baig was the ancestor who migrated from his hometown Samarkand (Khurasan), in A.D. 1530, to India, along with two hundred of his companions that included his relatives and staff. He was a nobleman, a scholar and a saintly figure. India was then under the rule of the Moghul emperor named Babar.

Mirza Hadi Baig selected an unpopulated area, seventy miles northeast of Lahore, to settle down with his clan. He founded a town which he named Islampur. Over time, the name Islampur went through a series of changes and came to be called Islampur Qadi Maajhi, then simply Qadi Maajhi, and then Qadi, and finally it became known as **Qadian**.

Mirza Gul Muhammad was the great-grandfather of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and was known for his honesty and God-fearing personality. Mirza Ata Muhammad was the grandfather of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. **Mirza Ghulam Murtaza** was his father's name while his mother's name was **Chiragh Bibi**. She was known for her hospitality and care of the poor.

### Birth and Childhood (February 13, 1835)

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was born on February 13, 1835 (14 Shawwal, A.H. 1250), before sunrise. He was born with a twin sister who did not survive. His twin birth fulfilled a prophecy recorded in Islamic literature for centuries that Mahdi Mau`ud (the Promised Reformer) will be born as a twin (Fusus al-Hikam by Muhy-id-Din Ibn Arabi).

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, as a child, was not fond of frolicking around aimlessly and did not take part in the mischief of his playmates. His elementary education was given to him at home by three different tutors, one after another.



## First Marriage and Unusual Religious Interest

His first marriage, at the age of fifteen years, was arranged with his first maternal cousin **Hurmat Bibi** (daughter of his maternal uncle, Mirza Jamaat Baig). Two sons, Mirza Sultan Ahmad and Mirza Fazal Ahmad, were born as a result of this marriage. Mirza Fazal Ahmad died in the prime of his youth. However, Mirza Sultan Ahmad lived long enough to eventually become an Ahmadi at the hands of his younger brother, Hadrat Khalifat-ul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup> (Muslih Mau'ud). His entering the fold of Ahmadiyyat fulfilled the part of the prophecy regarding Muslih Mau'ud - He will cause three to become four. Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> had three other sons from his second marriage and Mirza Sultan Ahmad, at first, did not accept Ahmadiyyat. His acceptance of Bai'at at the hands of his elder brother, Hadrat Muslih Mau'ud<sup>ra</sup>, turned the fourth brother to be the same as the other three. Hence, the three became four.

Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> cherished his privacy and spent most of his time in prayers or immersed in the study of the Holy Qur'an. His father was quite conscious of his son's great preoccupation with religion. Regarding his son, he would usually remark to his friends, "This son of mine is a 'maseetar' (In Punjabi; One who spends most of his time in a mosque, saying prayers). He does not seek any employment nor is he interested in earning for himself."

If only he had lived a little longer, he would have seen for himself how renowned his son (the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>) had become and how devoted followers from far and wide were waiting on him. (Tadhkirat-ul-Mahdi, part 2)

## A Vision of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> (1864 or 1865)

When he was thirty or thirty-one years old, he saw the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> in a vision. The details of this vision shed light on the strong ties of his love for the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> that distinguished him from everyone else and foretold of his remarkable spiritual future.

## A Job in Sialkot (1864-1868)

Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> had to work for the government (from 1864 to 1868) to respect the wishes of his father, but he was not inclined towards a worldly career, and considered the short period of his employment to be a "prison sentence."

While employed at Sialkot, he still managed to devote all his spare time to the study of the Holy Qur'an and social work. He kept up his religious debates with the Christian missionaries in the area and did much to stem the rising tide of Christianity.

He returned to Qadian in 1868, following his father's wishes, given his mother's illness. She passed away before he could reach Qadian.

**Exercise 4.1: Answer the questions below.**

**The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s fathers name was:**

- a. Mirza Ghulam Murtaza
- b. Mirza Sharif Ahmad
- c. Mirza Sultan Ahmad
- d. Mirza Gul Muhammad

**The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s mother's name was:**

- a. Hurmat Bibi
- b. Chiragh Bibi
- c. Burlas
- d. Qadi Majhi

The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> was born with a twin sister.	True	False
The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> was educated at home by tutors rather than going to a school.	True	False
The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> loved to play, was loud, and very mischievous as a child.	True	False

**What is the date of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s birth?**

-----

**How old was the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> when he was first married?**

- a. 25
- b. 15
- c. 35
- d. 40

**What does the word "maseetar" mean?**

- a. One who is in trouble
- b. One who spends most of his time in a mosque
- c. One who does not go to the mosque
- d. None of the above

**What was the name of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s first wife?**

-----

The Holy Prophet <sup>sa</sup> appeared in a dream to the Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> when he was 45 years old.	True	False
--	------	-------

The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> debated with Christian missionaries who were spreading Christianity in India.	True	False
--	------	-------

**Why did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> take a job in Sialkot?**

- a. To make more money
- b. Because he got a good job
- c. To respect his father's wishes
- d. To preach about the message of Islam

**Why did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> return to Qadian in 1868?**

- a. His grandmother was ill and dying
- b. His mother was ill and dying
- c. His health was not well
- d. He did not want to work anymore

**First Revelation and a Glorious Mission (1868 or 1869)**

In 1868 or 1869, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> refused to be drawn into a religious debate against Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi because he did not want to debate somebody just for the sake of debating.

He was not interested in seeking fame in this way. He preferred to win the approval and pleasure of Allah, rather than submit to the pressure of people who wanted him to get involved in that debate against Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> held the correct view that the Holy Qur'an has the top priority, and the sayings of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> (Hadith) hold priority after that.

God was very pleased with his righteous conduct. That night, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> received a revelation in Urdu - translated as:

'God is very pleased with this act of yours, and He will bless you in great measure – so much so that even Kings will seek blessings from your clothing.'

**Father's Death and Promise of Divine Support**

His father passed away in June 1876 after sunset. The same day at noon, he received a revelation in which God Almighty told him of his father's death.



In this condition of grief, he thought for a while that the financial resources associated with his father would come to an end and, perhaps, the days of poverty and pain would now prevail. Immediately, he received another revelation from God:

أَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِكَافٍ عَبْدَهُ ط

*Alaisallaahu bikaafin abdahoo*

Translation: Is Allah not sufficient for His servant

This gave him a feeling of relief and peace of mind as it was now clear that God would take care of all his needs.

### The Case of Post Office (1877)

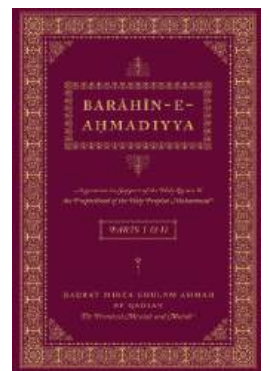
In 1877, a Christian advocate, Ralia Ram, sued the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in a court of law. The pretext of this case was that the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> had unknowingly placed a letter inside a parcel that he had mailed. He did not know that it was against the law to place a letter inside a parcel.

Although the lawyers advised the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> to tell a lie and state that he had not put the letter inside the packet, he remained firm and told the truth. It was due to the blessing of God and the strength of truth that the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was acquitted of this charge. In a vision, God had already shown him that Ralia Ram had conspired to get him involved in this case. Allah foretold the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> that he will remain unharmed.

### Publication of his First Book – Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya (1880)

**Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya** (which means “The Ahmadiyya Arguments”) is a remarkable and scholarly book whose first two volumes were published in 1880. Volume 3 was published in 1882 and Volume 4 in 1884.

The purpose of this great book was to repel the attacks on Islam by various religious movements (which included Christianity, and two new movements, Arya Samaj and Brahman Samaj) and to defend Islam with convincing arguments.



This great book showed the expert defense of Islam by the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and proved the superiority of the Holy Qur’an over other scriptures. He demonstrated the truth of the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> and explained the need for revelation from God to continue for humanity. His arguments proved an effective weapon to defeat the enemies of Islam.



### First Revelation about His Appointment as a Reformer (1882)

In 1882, he saw the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> in a vision and it was then that he received the first revelation from God that he was appointed **Mujaddid**, or a Reformer.

### His Second Marriage (November 17, 1884)

According to God's revelations, he married **Hadrat Sayyida Nusrat Jahan<sup>ra</sup>**, daughter of Mir Nasir Nawab of Delhi, on Nov. 17, 1884.

### Exercise 4.2: Answer the questions below.

**The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> refused to debate with this man for the sake of debate:**

- Pandit Lekh Ram
- Muhammad Hussain Batalvi
- Mirza Sultan Ahmad

**In the first revelation, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was told that these people would seek blessings from his clothing:**

- Queens
- Kings
- Muslims

**Translate the revelation below:**

أَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِكَافٍ عَبْدَهُ ط

-----  
**What was the name of the man who sued the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in the Post Office case?**

-----  
**What was the name of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s first book?**

- Masih Hindustan Mein—Jesus in India
- Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya—The Ahmadiyya Arguments
- Fath-e-Islam—The Victory of Islam

**Mujaddid means:**

- a. A redeemer
- b. A reformer
- c. A khalifa
- d. A messiah

**Who did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> see in a dream telling him that he was appointed a Reformer by Allah?**

- a. Hadrat Adam<sup>as</sup>
- b. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>
- c. Angel Jibreel<sup>as</sup>

**What was the name of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s second wife?**

- a. Hadrat Sayyida Nusrat Jahan<sup>ra</sup>
- b. Hurmat Bibi
- c. Chiragh Bibi
- d. He was only married once

The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> was worried about how he would support himself when his father passed away.	True	False
The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> wrote his first book to defend Islam against the Christians and Hindus who were attacking the religion.	True	False
The appointment as Mujaddid or Reformer was in the year 1882.	True	False

**Announcement of being the Reformer of the Age (March 1885)**

In March 1885, he announced through a public advertisement, sent to almost all the renowned religious leaders, scholars, and kings of the world that according to the revelation from God, he was the **Reformer of the age** and that his spiritual attributes were like the attributes of Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup>, son of Mary. This advertisement also included an invitation to all of them to visit him in Qadian and observe for themselves the divine signs in favor of the truth of his proclamation.

**The Divine Sign of 'Red Drops' (July 10, 1885)**

On the 27th day of fasting, in the sacred month of Ramadan, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was lying down, on his side, in the bed. A devoted companion, Hadrat Maulawi Abdullah Sanauri<sup>ra</sup>, who was massaging his feet to comfort him, felt

that the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s body trembled a little (as he was seeing a dream). Right at that moment, the companion noticed a few fresh red drops had somehow appeared on the ankle of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> as well as on his clothes.

Later on, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> relayed to Hadrat Maulawi Abdullah Sanauri<sup>ra</sup> what he saw in the dream. He also explained that it is a strange phenomenon that incidents which occur during dreams may also leave their signs behind in the physical world. These are divine signs which reflect God's attributes and may sometimes become visible to people who possess spiritual eminence.

### The Sign of the Meteors (November 1885)

On the night of the 27th of November, 1885, there was an unusual display of trailblazing meteors in the sky. Their appearance was yet another fulfillment of an earlier prophecy indicating the arrival of the Messiah. These meteors were a divine sign in favor of the truth of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

### Journey to Hoshiarpur and Prophecy Regarding Muslih Mau'ud (February 20, 1886)

In January 1886, under divine guidance, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> went to **Hoshiarpur** and spent **40 days and nights** in a continuous state of worship of God and prayers. On February 20, 1886, after the conclusion of the 40-day period, he issued a public statement that included several prophecies. One of those prophecies concerned the **birth of a Promised Reformer**, or Muslih Mau'ud. God foretold that a handsome and spiritually purified son would be born to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> who will be a sign of God's mercy. (Tabligh-e-Risalat, Vol. 1)

Later, on the 22nd of March 1886, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> issued another public statement in which, according to divine revelation, he fixed a nine-year period in which that Promised Son would be born. According to the divine promise, on the 12th of January 1889, the prophecy regarding the birth of a Promised Reformer was fulfilled when **Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>** was born. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and his second wife, Hadrat Sayyida Nusrat Jahan<sup>ra</sup>, had ten children in total and out of them, five survived to live long lives.

**Exercise 4.3: Fill in the blanks using information from the text above.**

In March of \_\_\_\_\_ Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> published an advertisement proclaiming that he was the \_\_\_\_\_ of the age.

One of the divine signs that was shown to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and his companion Hadrat Maulawi Abdullah Sanauri<sup>ra</sup> was the appearance of \_\_\_\_\_ on the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s clothes.

Another sign was the unusual appearance of \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky in November of 1885.

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> spent 40 days in the city of \_\_\_\_\_ under divine guidance to pray.

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and his second wife, Hadrat Sayyida Nusrat Jahan<sup>ra</sup> had \_\_\_\_\_ children and out of them, \_\_\_\_\_ survived and lived long lives.

**First Initiation (Bai`at) - March 23, 1889**

The first initiation, or **Bai`at**, ceremony took place at the house of Hadrat Sufi Munshi Ahmad Jan<sup>ra</sup> at **Ludhiana**. The first person to be initiated into Ahmadiyyat was **Hadrat Maulana Nur-ud-Din<sup>ra</sup>** of Bhera.

**Claim of Being the Promised Messiah - End of 1890**

God clearly revealed to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> that he, in fact, was the person fulfilling the prophecy of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>, according to which Jesus<sup>as</sup>, son of Mary, was to appear in the latter days. It was also made clear that the earlier Messiah, Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup>, had died just like other prophets of God and would not physically reappear. This was why the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> made a public announcement about the fact that:

1. He was divinely appointed as the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and,
2. Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup> was a prophet and had died like other human beings before him. He would not return to earth in his physical form.

To make these proclamations, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> published two small booklets called '**Fath-e-Islam**' (Victory of Islam) and '**Taudih-i-Maram**' (Elucidation of Objectives) in 1891. The publication of these two booklets started a campaign of bitter opposition against the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> throughout India.

### **The Debate of Ludhiana - July 20, 1891**

This debate took place in Ludhiana between the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi. In this debate, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> proved that the **Holy Qur'an** took priority over the Hadith or sayings of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. However, his opponent, Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi took the view that ahadith could supersede what is written in the Holy Qur'an if there were some confusion. However, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> defeated Batalvi in this debate.

The actual debate was about the life and death of Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup>, but Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi was ill-prepared to argue this topic, which led to his great humiliation. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> recorded the detail of this debate in an important book called 'Izala Auham.'

### **A Divine Invitation and a Decree of Disbelief from the Ulema**

Towards the end of 1891, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> invited all the religious divines and scholars to compete with him in receiving favors from God in selected matters. History has shown that God favors only that person who is truthful in his claim; it was a competition to see who was God's chosen one.

Various religious scholars realized that they were neither able to compete with the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in the field of religious arguments nor were they able to compete with him in receiving divine favors to prove their truth. This defeat led the so-called scholars to secure a decree (fatwah) of disbelief from two hundred Maulawis against the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, filled with abusive language.

Batalvi was the leader of this group of Maulawis who produced this decree of disbelief. No decent person would find it possible to read the abusive language contained in this document.

**First Annual Convention— Jalsa Salana - December 1891**

Under divine direction, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, established the Annual Convention (**Jalsa Salana**) in Qadian. He selected 27th, 28th and 29th of December of every year to be the period in which this Annual Convention would convene. The first Jalsa Salana, attended by seventy-five people, took place in Aqsa Mosque in Qadian.

**The Book, A'ina-e-Kamalat-e-Islam (Mirror for the Excellence of Islam) - February 1893**

This famous book of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was published in February 1893. This book contains the miraculous virtues of Islam and a very convincing description of the beauty of the Holy Qur'an.

In addition to the publication of this book, another important booklet called Barakat-ud-Du'a (The Blessings of Prayer) was published on April 28th of the same year. This booklet contained a refutation of the misleading ideas of Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan, an Islamic philosopher of that time, regarding prayer.

**The Debate of Jang-e-Muqaddas (Holy War) - May-June 1893**

This debate took place from May 20 to June 5, 1893, between the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and two Christian Missionaries, Deputy Abdullah Atham and Dr. Martin Clark. The topic of this debate was the claim of modern Christianity that Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup> was God. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> defeated the Christian missionaries in the field of arguments, and this clear victory of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> had a very strong impact on those who attended this debate.

**Exercise 4.4: Write short answers for the questions below.**

**Who was the first man to take Bai'at at the hands of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>? Where and when did this take place?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**What two booklets did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> publish in 1891? What was the message contained in these books?**

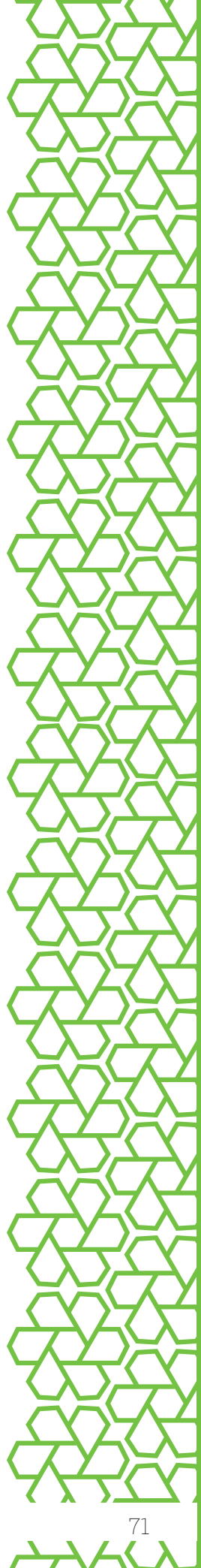
-----



-----  
-----  
-----  
**What was the topic that Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi and the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> debated? Who won this debate?**

-----  
-----  
-----  
**What topic of modern Christianity was debated during the debate of Jang-e-Muqaddas?**

-----  
-----  
-----  
**When and where was the first Jalsa (convention)? How many people attended?**







# Part II





# The Holy Qur'an

Learning and teaching the Holy Qur'an is a source of great blessings. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said, "The best of you is the one who learns the Holy Qur'an and then teaches it to others". (Bukhari, Kitab Faza'il-ul-Qur'an)

## Tajweed Rules: Ghunna

### Al-Tarteel Lesson #10

- <http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-10>

#### What is Noon Saakin?

- A letter with a sukoon is called **saakin**. Noon saakin is the letter noon with a sukoon (jazam).
- Noon Saakin may appear either in between letters of a word or at the end of a word

Examples:

أَنْعَمْتَ - أَنْزَلَ - مِنْهُمْ - كُنْتُمْ  
مَنْ - مِنْ - إِنَّ - كُنْ

#### What is Tanween?

- Double strokes over or under a letter are called **Tanween**.

سَوَاءٌ - رَغَدًا - عَيْنٍ

- Tanween can never appear in the middle of a word. It is always at the end of a word.
- Noon Saakin and Tanween have different shapes, but they sound the same. They both produce a nasal sound.

### Special Rules Concerning Noon Saakin and Tanween

There are two kinds of nasal sounds:

1. Clear and short nasal sound of about one second.
2. Sustained, concealed and prolonged nasal sound of about two seconds.

However, there are specific places where Noon Saakin and Tanween do not

produce nasal sound at all.

No Nasal Sound: When a Noon Saakin or Tanween is followed by Raa Mushaddad (رّ) or Laam Mushaddad (لّ). For example,

مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ ، مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ  
هَبْ لَنَا مِنْ لَدُنْكَ رَحْمَةً، أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

### More Practice for Noon Saakin & Tanween

هُدًى لِلْمُتَّقِينَ  
وَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفُوًا أَحَدٌ  
وَيْلٌ لِّكُلِّ هُمَزَةٍ لُّمَزَةٍ  
فَهُوَ فِي عِيشَةٍ رَاضِيَةٍ  
إِنَّ رَبَّهُمْ بِهِمْ يَوْمَئِذٍ خَبِيرٌ

## Tajweed Rules: Ikhfa

## Al-Tarteel Lesson #23

- <http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-23>

**What is the rule of Ikhfa of Noon Saakin and Tanween?**

If any of the following 15 letters appear after Noon Saakin or Tanween,

ت ث ج د ذ ز س ش  
ص ض ط ظ ف ق ك

then the Noon Saakin or Tanween will be pronounced with a light nasal sound (ghunna) and prolonged for about two seconds or counts.

**Examples from the Holy Qur'an**

كُنْتُمْ . اُنْتِى . اَنْجَيْنٰكُمْ . اَنْدَاآ . مُنْذِرٌ

اُنزِلَ . نَنْسَخُ . اَنْشَاْنَا . فَاَنْصُرْنَا

مَنْصُودٍ . اِنْطَلِقُوا . اُنظُرْ

يَنْقَلِبُ . مِنْكُمْ

اَنْ تَكُوْنَ . مِنْ ثَمَرَةٍ . مَنْ جَاءَ . مِنْ دُوْنِهِ

مَنْ ذَالَّذِي . مَنْ زَلَّهَا . مِنْ سَجَّيْلِ

مِنْ شَرٍّ . مِنْ صِيَامٍ . مَنْ ضَلَّ . مِنْ طُورٍ

مِنْ ظُهُورِهَا . مِنْ فِرْعَوْنَ . مِنْ قَبِيْلِكَ

اِنْ كُنْتَ



## Tajweed Rules: Idgham e yarmaloon

## Al-Tarteel Lesson #21

- <https://www.alislam.org/v/4137.html>
- PDF files for this lesson:  
<https://www.alislam.org/quran/tarteel/Al-Tarteel-Lesson-21.pdf>

## What is the meaning of Idgham?

- Assimilation
- Blending
- Joining

There are two kinds of Idgham

- Idgham-Billa-Ghunna (Assimilation without nasal sound)
- Idgham-Bil-Ghunna (Assimilation with nasal sound)

Idgham-Billa-Ghunna has been practiced in Part 1 on page 58.

## Idgham-Bil-Ghunna (Assimilation with nasal sound)

If the first word ends either with a Saakin Noon or with a Tanween and the next word starts with any of the following letters ( ن - م - و - ي ) then assimilation will take place with a long nasal sound.

You can use this mnemonic to help you remember these letters:

ي - و - م - ن

يُومِن

## Examples of Noon Saakin or Tanween Examples of Noon Saakin or Tanween

followed by the letter ي

مَنْ يَقُولُ -  
مُنَادِيًا يُنَادِي -  
أَنْ يُؤْصَلَ -

followed by the letter و

ظَلُمْتُ وَرَعْدًا وَبَرْقًا -  
مِنْ وَرَأْيِهِمْ -  
وَوَالِدٍ وَمَا وَلَدَ -

Examples of Noon Saakin or Tanween Examples of Noon Saakin or Tanween

followed by the letter م

هُدًى مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ  
أَزْوَاجٍ مُّطَهَّرَةٍ  
مِّن مَّسَدٍ

followed by the letter ن

رَسُولًا نَّبِيًّا  
وَمَا لَهُمْ مِّن نَّاصِرِينَ  
يَوْمَئِذٍ نَّاعِمَةٌ

**Remember these words**

The following word contains all the six letters of Idgham (blending with or without a nasal sound):

يَزْمَلُونَ

Assimilation without a nasal sound is with the letters:

ل ر

Assimilation with a nasal sound is with the letters:

يومن

## Enrichment: Holy Qur'an Research

### Guidelines for Holy Qur'an Enrichment Section

- This section is **not** for testing purposes, but is designed to show that the Holy Qur'an is a living document that supports us in our every day life.
- The goal of these topics of discussion is exactly that: discussion! You may not agree on an answer, but the goal is a deeper understanding.
- Your classroom is a safe space and honest comments are welcome.
- Respect silence during discussions as this can be an indication of a deeper thought process.
- Sitting in a group style rather than a classroom style setting may help.
- Your teacher is there to help moderate your discussion. No questions are bad and if your teacher needs, they can refer to a murrabi to help obtain answers to your questions.
- Approximate timings of each section should help you stay on track.
  - Research: 15 minutes
  - Discuss: 20 minutes
  - Reflect: 5 minutes

To search up key words, use <https://www.alislam.org/Our'an/app/>

Hint: Under the "Settings" tab, you can turn on the Five-Volume Commentary for better search results.

## Gender Preference

### Exercise 1.8: Research

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search up the concepts of:

1. **Gender**
2. **'Sons and daughters'**

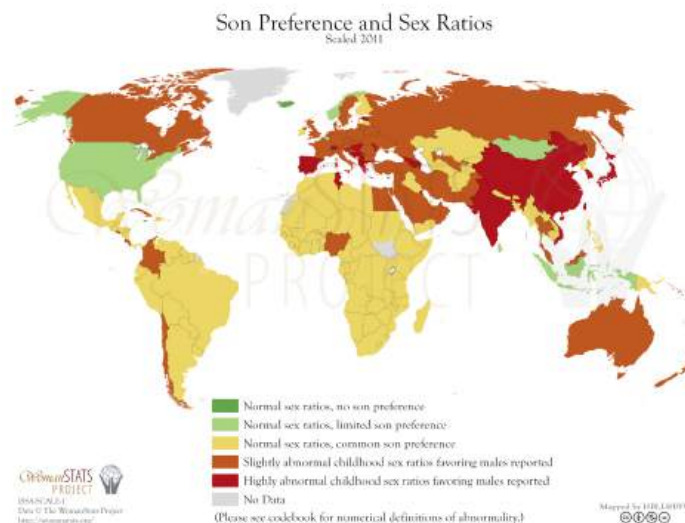
Think about these concepts in relation to wanting sons or daughters. Then have a discussion based on the questions below.

### Discuss

- Can you identify cultures where having a boy-child is preferred over a girl-child?<sup>1</sup>
- Who is primarily "blamed" for having a daughter, the mother or the father?
- What does the Holy Qur'an say about the equality of men and women?

### Reflect

1. Scientifically, a male's chromosome determines if the child will be a girl or a boy. Therefore, holding a mother responsible for the birth of a daughter is biologically incorrect, to say the least.
2. According to Qur'an, it is Allah the Almighty who "creates what He pleases." Therefore, in His infinite wisdom, Allah bestows sons and daughters on whomever He wishes.
3. We should value and love sons and daughters equally and never blame the mother for the gender of a newborn.



<sup>1</sup> <https://www.theatlantic.com/national/archive/2011/06/twice-many-americans-prefer-have-sons/352166/>

**Exercise 1.9: Research**

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search up the concepts of:

1. **Prayers**
2. **Salat**
3. **Supplication**

Supplication means the action of asking or begging for something earnestly or humbly. Think about these concepts in relation to communicating with Allah. Then have a discussion based on the questions below.

**Discuss**

- What is the point of Prayer (salat)? Is it different from du'a?
- How can we increase the chances that Allah accepts our Prayers?
- Is it possible to be a good Muslim without offering Prayers?

**Reflect**

1. Prayer, in essence, means a relationship of mutual attraction between a righteous person and his Lord. This means that God's grace first draws a person towards Himself, and then, through the magnetism of the person's sincerity, God draws closer to him.<sup>1</sup>
2. Salat is not just postures and words. The essence of Salat is to communicate with Allah and to plead, beg, and humble ourselves in front of Him.
3. Remember that all relationships require mutual interest. So if you expect God to show up for you, remember to show up for Salat.

---

1 *Blessings of Prayer*, Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup>

## Purdah: For Men and Women

### Exercise 1.10: Research

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search the concepts of:

1. **Restrain eyes**
2. **Head-coverings**

Think about how these larger concepts shape the way we interact with the opposite gender, protect our own sense of modesty, as well as the modesty of others while on-line.

### Discuss

- What does the Qur'an say about purdah for men and women?
- What vices could be eliminated if our society began to act upon this commandment of the Holy Qur'an?
- We spend a lot of time on-line. How would the guidance of purdah apply to watching videos on YouTube or looking at photos on social media?

### Reflect

1. While purdah is often seen as a women's issue, it is important to note that the commandment of purdah is given to men first, then women.
2. The spirit and practice of Ghadd Basr or lowering one's gaze is essential to the practice of purdah. A physical covering or separation mean very little if the essence of modesty is missing.
3. Allah reminds us that our ears, eyes, and heart will all bear witness to our actions and intentions. Keep this in mind when you are browsing the Internet or interacting on-line.

**Exercise 1.11: Research**

Use the Holy Qur'an app and search the concepts of:

1. Tribes
2. Best people
3. False pride

Think about how these larger concepts shape the way we perceive and judge others based on their physical qualities, and the growing isolation of communities. Then have a discussion based on the questions below.

**Discuss**

- Which race is the best? Which people are considered best in Allah's eyes? Why?
- What will happen if America followed the Qur'anic teaching about race relations?
- Do you think this problem exists within us? What to do about it?

**Reflect**

1. Thinking of your own race as better than another is rooted in self-pride. In Islam, no group of people is considered better than anyone based on their origin or ethnicity. Instead, true superiority in Allah's eyes comes only from righteousness.
2. Racism still exists. Fifty six percent of all adults in America say being black hurts people's ability to get ahead at least a little, and fifty-one percent say the same about being Hispanic. In contrast, 59% say being white helps people's ability to get ahead.<sup>1</sup>
3. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> stated: "All mankind is from Adam and Eve. There is no superiority of an Arab over a non-Arab nor a non-Arab, neither white skin over black skin, nor black skin over white except by piety and good action."<sup>2</sup>

1 <https://www.pewresearch.org/social-trends/2019/04/09/race-in-america-2019/>

2 (Masnad Ahmad Bin Humal)



## Huroof Al-Izh-haar

### Al-Tarteel Lesson #9

<http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-9>

There are 29 letters in the Arabic language. Out of the 29 letters, the following six letters are produced from the throat:

ا ء ه ع ح غ خ

These six letters are known as **Huroof Al Izh-haar** or Letters of the Throat or Letters of Manifestation.

If Noon Saakin or Tanween is followed by any of the six mentioned letters the nasal sound will be kept short and clear for about one second. Look at the following examples:

مِنْ عِبَادِنَا - تَنْجِتُونَ - مِنْهُمْ - مِنْ غَيْرِ - عَرْشٌ عَظِيمٌ  
عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ - عَلِيمًا حَكِيمًا -

وَمِنْ شَرِّ غَاسِقٍ إِذَا وَقَبَ<sup>ل</sup>

وَمِنْ شَرِّ حَاسِدٍ إِذَا حَسَدَ

وَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفْرًا أَحَدٌ<sup>ع</sup>

مَا أَغْنَىٰ عَنْهُ مَالُهُ وَمَا كَسَبَ<sup>ط</sup>

وَأَمَّنَّهُمْ مِّنْ خَوْفٍ

وَأَرْسَلَ عَلَيْهِمْ طَيْرًا أَبَابِيلَ

## Al-Tarteel Lesson #15

<http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-15>

**Iqlaab** means to change a letter with another letter. There are some places in the Holy Qur'an where we apply this change during recitation.

Iqlaab will take place if Noon Saakin or Tanween is followed by the letter Baa. Practice this example:

قَوْلًا يَلِيَعْلًا أَنْبِئُهُمْ  
جَنَّةٍ بِرَبْوَةٍ تَنْبُتُ

Noon Saakin or Tanween will be changed to Meem in pronunciation. Look at the following examples:

زَوْجٍ يَهِيحِ	لَيًّا بِالسِّنْتِهِمْ	غَمًّا بَعْمَ
أَيْتٍ بِيْنَتٍ	حَدِيثٍ بَعْدَهُ	خَبِيرًا بِصِيرًا
أَنْبَاكَ	يَسْتَنْبِئُونَكَ	مِنْ بَعْدِ
مِنْ بِيُوتِكُمْ	سُنْبِلَتِ	فَأَنْبَجَسَتْ

وَأَنْتَ حِلٌّ بِهَذَا الْبَلَدِ  
وَأَمَّا مَنْ بَخِلَ وَاسْتَعْنَى  
كَلَّا لَئِنْ لَمْ يَنْتَهْ لَنْسَفَعًا بِالنَّاصِيَةِ  
فَدَمَدَمَ عَلَيْهِمْ رَبُّهُمْ بِذُنُوبِهِمْ فَسَوَّهَا  
بِأَيِّ ذَنْبٍ قُتِلَتْ  
صُمَّ بَكُمْ عُمِّي فَهُمْ لَا يَرْجِعُونَ

## Huroof e Mustalia (Thick and Heavy Letters)

### Al-Tarteel Lesson #26

<http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-26>

Sound wise the Arabic letters are of two kinds:

- Letters which are light in sound
- Letters which are heavy in sound

For example, Sin has a light sound like "S" in the English word "seen", while Sad has a heavy sound like "S" in the English word "salt." While reading words, an Arabic letter is pronounced mostly as heavy but sometimes it is pronounced light. The following letters will be pronounced heavy. Look at the following examples:

The nearest English approximation of Qāf is the pronunciation of "k" in talk.

ق

قَآئِلِينَ + قَالٌ + اِسْتَقَامُوا  
رِزْقًا + قَارِعَةً + قَابِلِ التَّوْبِ  
قَائِمُونَ + فَتَلَّقَنِي + شِقَاقِ

The nearest pronunciation of Kha is sound in Scottish "loch" and German "achtung".

خ

خَالِدِينَ + خَآئِبِينَ + خَاسِرِينَ  
خَاسِيِينَ + خَالِصًا + يُخَادِعُونَ  
تَخَافُونَ + بِخَارِجِينَ + الْخَائِنِينَ

The nearest pronunciation of Ghayn can be approximated by the pronunciation of the French “r” in such words as “Paris” and “renard”.

غ

غَاسِقِي + يَتَاغَمَرُونَ + غَابِرِينَ  
إِبْتِغَاءً + بِغَابِلٍ + أَلْغَاشِيَةَ  
غَافِرِ الذَّنْبِ + فِرْعَانًا + صَائِعًا

The following four letters are also known as “emphatic” letters. As an example, Sād is pronounced as in “saw” or “salt”.

ص

صَالِحِينَ + صَادِقِينَ + صَائِعًا  
أَبْصَارَهُمْ + صَارِمِينَ + مَحِيصًا  
مَصَانِعَ + صَابِرَةً + صِغْرُونَ

ض

The English equivalent for Dād is “dul”.

لِتَرْضَى + أَضَاءَ لَهُمْ + بِضَارِّينَ  
تَرْضَاهَا + مَرِيضًا + مَرَضًا  
بَيْضَاءَ + أَلْضَائِينَ + ضَامِرٍ

ط

طَائِفِينَ + الطَّارِقُ + الشَّيْطَانِ

لُوطًا + سُلْطِينَ + طَائِفَةً

أَقْطَالَ + شَطَطًا + وَسَطًا

The English equivalent for Ta is "task".

ظ

ظَالِمُونَ + عِظَامًا + حَفِيظًا

أَيْقَاطًا + تَلْظِي + حِفْظًا

ظَالِمَةٌ + الظَّالِمِينَ + الظَّالِمَاتِينَ

Za has no English equivalent.

## Response Prayers

When reciting or listening to the recitation of the Holy Qur'an, response prayers are to be said after certain verses. A selection of some are given below:

**Surah Al-Fatihah**

At the end of Surah Al-Fatihah, in response to the prayer ending in

وَالَّذِينَ لَا الضَّالِّينَ

*And those who have not gone astray. (1:7)*

we should say:

آمِينَ

Ameen

**Surah Al-Fat'h**

In response to the phrase in Surah Al-Fat'h,

مُحَمَّدٌ رَّسُولُ اللَّهِ

*Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah; (48:30)*

we should say:

صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ

Peace and blessings of Allah be upon him!

**Surah Ar-Rahman**

In Surah Ar-Rahman, after each repetition of the question:

فَبِأَيِّ آلَاءِ رَبِّكُمَا تُكَذِّبِينَ

*Which, then, of the favors of your Lord will you twain deny? (55:14 – 78)*

we should respond:

لَا بِشَيْءٍ مِّن تَعْمَتِكَ نُكذِّبُ يَا رَبَّنَا

None of Your favors do we deny, O our Lord! (Tirmidhi-Tafseer Surah Al-Rahman)

### Surah Al-A`la

After the second verse of Surah Al-A`la,

○ سُبِّحِ اسْمَ رَبِّكَ الْأَعْلَى

*Glorify the name of thy Lord, the Most High (87:2)*

we should dutifully say:

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْأَعْلَى -

Holy is My Lord, the Most High! (Jawahirul-Ihsan)

### Surah Al-Ghashiyah

At the end of the following verse in Surah Al-Ghashiyah,

○ إِنَّ إِلَيْنَا إِيَابَهُمْ ○ ثُمَّ إِنَّ عَلَيْنَا حِسَابَهُمْ

*Unto Us surely is their return; Then, surely, it is for Us to call them to account.*

*(88:26-27)*

the following is recited:

اللَّهُمَّ حَاسِبِنِي حِسَابًا يَسِيرًا ط

O Allah, bring me to account with leniency! (Tafseer-e Kabeer, Vol. 8)

### Surah Al-Tin

At the end of Surah Al-Tin, when Allah asks –

○ أَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِأَحْكَمِ الْحَكِمِينَ

*Is not Allah the Best of judges? (95:9)*

we agree and say,

بَلَىٰ وَ أَنَا عَلَىٰ ذَٰلِكَ مِنَ الشَّاهِدِينَ ط

Yes! And I am among the witnesses to that! (Jawahirul-Ihsan)



## Surah An-Nasr

Similarly, at the end of Surah An-Nasr,

فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ<sup>ط</sup>

*Glorify thy Lord, with His praise, and seek forgiveness of Him. (110:4)*

we should say,

سُبْحَانَكَ اللَّهُمَّ رَبَّنَا وَبِحَمْدِكَ - اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لَنَا

Holy are You, O Allah Our Lord, with all Your Praises; O Allah, protect me from sin! (Bukhari Kitabut-Tafseer)

**Exercise 1.1: Memorize the Arabic response prayers and their translations.**



## Madd-e-Mutasil (Attached Prolongation)

### Al-Tarteel Lesson #5

<http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-5>

There are two broad categories of prolongation.

- Original Prolongation – Normal duration to pronounce a letter followed by a letter of prolongation is 2 seconds.

نُوحِيهَا - أُوتِينَا - أُوزِينَا

- Conditional Prolongation

بِمَا أَنْزَلَ - سَوَاءٌ - حَاجَّهَ - آلَيْنِ

If a letter of prolongation is followed by a Humza, it will be prolonged up to 4 seconds. This prolongation does not involve two words, but only one word.

○ وَأَمَّا السَّائِلَ فَلَا تَنْهَرُ

تَنْزِلَ الْمَلَكَةُ وَالرُّوحُ فِيهَا بِأذنِ رَبِّهِمْ

○ الْفِيهِمْ رِحْلَةَ الشِّتَاءِ وَالصَّيْفِ

○ الَّذِينَ هُمْ يُرَآؤُونَ

أُولَئِكَ - سَوَاءٌ - السُّفَهَاءُ - فَلَمَّا أَضَاءَتْ -

السَّمَاءِ - كُلَّمَا أَضَاءَ لَهُمْ - وَ لَوْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ -

بِنَاءٍ - مَاءٍ - شُهَدَاءَ كُمْ -

## Madd-e-Munfasil (Detached Prolongation)

If a word ends at a letter of prolongation followed by Humza Alif, it will be prolonged up to 3 seconds. This prolongation involves two words in order.

خَتَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَى قُلُوبِهِمْ وَ عَلَى سَمْعِهِمْ ط  
وَ عَلَى أَبْصَارِهِمْ غِشَاوَةً فَنَسُوا لَهُمُ عَذَابَ عَظِيمٍ ع

بِمَا أُنزِلَ - وَمَا أُنزِلَ - عَلَى أَبْصَارِهِمْ -  
إِلَّا أَنْفُسَهُمْ - قَالُوا إِنَّمَا - آلَا إِنَّهُمْ -  
كَمَا آمَنَ - قَالُوا أَنْوْمِنُ - كَمَا آمَنَ -  
إِلَّا إِنَّهُمْ - قَالُوا آمَنَّا - قَالُوا إِنَّا -

## Madd-e-Lazim (Compulsory Prolongation)

### Al-Tarteel Lesson #27

<http://www.mta.tv/al-tarteel/al-tarteel-lesson-27>

Madd-e-Lazim is that madd where after the letters of madd, there is an original sukun i.e. the sukun which is part of the word whether one stops or not.

الضَّالِّينَ - مُدَّهَا مَتْنٍ - بِضَا رَيْنَ - ضَالًّا

الظَّالِّينَ - الضَّالُّونَ - الطَّامَّةُ - الصَّاحَّةُ

تَأْمُرُونِي - اتَّحَاجُّونِي - لِيَحَاجُّوكُمْ

## Summary of Rules of Prolongation

How does a letter prolong within text of the Holy Qur'an?

م	Simple letter Meem	No restriction	Meem
مَ	Meem with Harakat	One second	Ma
مَا	Meem with Harf al-Madd	Up to 2 seconds	Maa
مَا أَغْنَى	Meem with a Harf al-Madd followed by Hamza Alif (alif with a Harakat)	Up to 3 seconds	Maaa
السَّمَاءِ	Meem with a Harf al-Madd followed by Hamza	Up to 4 seconds	Ma-aaa

### Exercise 1.6: Answer the following questions.

**Identify and practice the rule of Maad-e-Munfasil in Surah Al-Saff (Chapter 61) and count the places where a consonant will be prolonged up to 3 seconds.**

**Identify and practice the rule of Maad-e-Mutasil in Surah Al-Rahman (Chapter 55) and count the places where a consonant will be prolonged up to 4 seconds**

**How much would you prolong in following two cases?**

مَا أَنْزَلَ - مَا وَدَّعَكَ





# Salat and Prayers



## Quranic Surahs

### Surah Al-Zilzāl

In the Name of Allah, the Gracious,  
the Merciful.

When the earth is shaken, with her  
violent shaking,

And the earth throws up her burdens,

And man says, 'What is the matter  
with her?'

On that day will she tell her news,

For, thy Lord will have commanded  
her.

On that day will men issue forth in  
scattered groups that they may be  
shown the results of their works.

Then whoso does an atom's weight  
of good will see it,

And whoso does an atom's weight of  
evil will also see it.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝  
اِذَا زُلْزِلَتِ الْاَرْضُ زِلْزَالَهَا ۝  
وَ اَخْرَجَتِ الْاَرْضُ اَثْقَالَهَا ۝  
وَ قَالَ الْاِنْسَانُ مَا لَهَا ۝  
یَوْمَئِذٍ تُخْبِرُهَا ۝  
بِاَنَّ رَبَّكَ اَوْحٰی لَهَا ۝  
یَوْمَئِذٍ یَّصْدُرُ النَّاسُ اَشْتَاتًا ۝  
لِّیُرَوْا اَعْمَالَهُمْ ۝

فَمَنْ یَّعْمَلْ مِثْقَالَ ذَرَّةٍ خَیْرًا یَّرَهُ ۝  
وَ مَنْ یَّعْمَلْ مِثْقَالَ ذَرَّةٍ شَرًّا یَّرَهُ ۝

### Commentary of Surah Al-Zilzāl

Surah Al-Zilzāl talks about the many ways in which the earth will change in the days of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and Mahdi. Allah tells us that not only will the earth be affected physically by violent earthquakes and catastrophes, but the commotion will be both internal and external.

The ripping open of the earth can signify three meanings. First, that there will be an expulsion of mineral wealth from underneath the earth. Second, there will be an extended release of all kinds of scientific, geological, and archeological information. Finally, people will revolt against the oppression of their rulers and will shed the burden of subjection.



In this surah, the scattered groups refer to the various groups that individuals will create to protect their agendas. Political, social, and economic interests will cause people to organize themselves into unions, cartels, and syndicates (lobbyists). The last two verses are a simultaneous message to those who do good and those who commit evil that nothing is hidden from Allah.

**Exercise 2.17: Memorize the Arabic for Surah Al-Zilzāl.**

**Exercise 2.18: Answer the following questions.**

**In Surah Al-Zilzāl, what kinds of natural phenomenon does Allah tell us about during the days of the messiah?**

---

---

---

**What does the phrase “the earth throws up her burdens mean”?**

---

---

---

**In the verse “On that day she will tell her news,” who does ‘she’ refer to?**

---

---

---

### Surah Al-Qāri'ah

In the Name of Allah, the Gracious,  
the Merciful.

The great Calamity!

What is the great Calamity?

And what should make thee know  
what the great Calamity is?

The day when mankind will be like  
scattered moths,

And the mountains will be like  
carded wool.

Then, as for him whose scales are  
heavy,

He will have a pleasant life.

But as for him whose scales are light,

Hell will be his nursing mother.

And what should make thee know  
what that is?

It is a burning Fire.

### Commentary of Surah Al-Qāri'ah

Surah Al-Qari'ah is the 101st chapter of the Holy Qur'an and has 12 verses. This surah was revealed in the early years of prophethood in Mecca. It gives a brief but very clear description of the tremendous convulsions and catastrophic upheavals that will shake the foundation of the world in the Latter Days. The surah can equally apply to the Day of Judgment, a day of calamity for the disbelievers.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝۱

الْقَارِعَةُ ۝۲

مَا الْقَارِعَةُ ۝۳

وَمَا أَدْرَاكَ مَا الْقَارِعَةُ ۝۴

یَوْمَ یَكُونُ النَّاسُ كَالْفَرَاشِ  
الْمَبْثُوثِ ۝۵

وَتَكُونُ الْجِبَالُ كَالْعِهْنِ الْمَنْفُوشِ ۝۶

فَأَمَّا مَنْ ثَقُلَتْ مَوَازِينُهُ ۝۷

فَهُوَ فِي عِيشَةٍ رَّاضِيَةٍ ۝۸

وَأَمَّا مَنْ خَفَّتْ مَوَازِينُهُ ۝۹

فَأُمُّهُ هَاوِيَةٌ ۝۱۰

وَمَا أَدْرَاكَ مَا هِيَ ۝۱۱

نَارٌ حَامِيَةٌ ۝۱۲

The descriptions of carded or shredded wool and scattered moths are meant to emphasize the dreadfulness of that calamity. There is an indication that people will not be able to find refuge anywhere. The surah explains that those whose scales of good deeds are heavy will continue to have a good life.

The concept of Hell is touched upon in the last few verses. The connection of sinful people with Hell will be like that of a baby with its mother in the sense that just as an embryo goes through various stages of development from the time it is conceived to the time it is a full-fledged human being, so too will the guilty people pass through different stages of spiritual punishment, until their souls are completely cleansed, and they will receive a sort of rebirth. Therefore, the purpose of Hell is to make the wicked repent their sins and to reform themselves. It is not a place of eternal punishment, but rather the Islamic concept of Hell is that of a penitentiary.

**calamity:** *noun* - an event causing great and often sudden damage or distress; a disaster.

**refuge:** *noun* - a condition of being safe or sheltered from pursuit, danger, or trouble.

**penitentiary:** *noun* - a prison for those convicted of serious crimes, but with Latin roots in the words 'repentance' it signals towards a punishment which is meant to reform

### Exercise 2.19: Memorize the Arabic of Surah Al-Qāri'ah.

#### Translation of Surah Al-Ikhlās

In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

Say, He is Allah, the One.

Allah, the Independent and Besought of all.

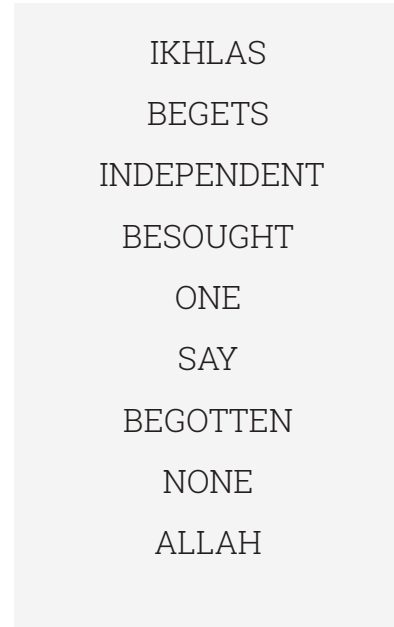
He begets not, nor is He begotten;

And there is none like unto Him.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝  
 قُلْ هُوَ اللّٰهُ اَحَدٌ ۝  
 اللّٰهُ الصَّمَدُ ۝  
 لَمْ يَلِدْ ۝ وَ لَمْ يُولَدْ ۝  
 وَ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهٗ كُفُوًا اَحَدٌ ۝

### Exercise 2.20: Memorize the translation of Surah Al-Ikhlās.

**Exercise 2.21: Find keywords from the translation of this surah in the word search below.**



**Translation of Surah Al-Lahab**

In the name of Allah, the Gracious,  
the Merciful.

Perished be the two hands of Abu  
Lahab, and he will perish.

His wealth and what he has earned  
shall avail him not.

Soon shall he enter into a blazing  
fire;

And his wife too, who goes about  
slandering.

Round her neck shall be a halter of  
twisted palm-fibre.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ①  
 تَبَّتْ یَدَا اَبِیْ لَهَبٍ وَ تَبَّتْ ②  
 مَا اَغْنٰی عَنْهُ مَالُهُ وَ مَا كَسَبَ ③  
 سَیَصْلٰی نَارًا ذَاتَ لَهَبٍ ④  
 وَ اَمْرَاَتُهُ حَمَّالَةَ الْحَطَبِ ⑤  
 فِیْ جَنَدِهَا حَبْلٌ مِّنْ مَّسَدٍ ⑥

**Exercise 2.22: Memorize the translation of Surah Al-Lahab.**

### Translation of Surah An-Nasr

In the name of Allah, the Gracious,  
the Merciful.

When the help of Allah comes, and  
the victory,

And thou seest men entering the  
religion of Allah in troops,

Glorify thy Lord, with His praise,  
and seek forgiveness of Him.  
Surely, He is Oft-Returning with  
compassion.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝۱  
اِذَا جَآءَ نَصْرُ اللّٰهِ وَ الْفَتْحُ ۝۲  
وَ رَاَيْتَ النَّاسَ يَدْخُلُوْنَ فِیْ دِیْنِ  
اللّٰهِ اَفْوَاجًا ۝۳  
فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَ اسْتَغْفِرْهُ ۝۴  
كَانَ تَوَّابًا ۝۵

**Exercise 2.23: Memorize the translation of Surah An-Nasr.**

**Exercise 2.24: Place the verses of Surah An-Nasr in order.**

\_\_\_\_\_And thou seest men entering the religion of Allah in troops,

\_\_\_\_\_Glorify thy Lord, with His praise, and seek forgiveness of Him. Surely, He is Oft-Returning with compassion.

\_\_\_\_\_In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

\_\_\_\_\_When the help of Allah comes, and the victory,





## Prayers

## For Allah's Mercy

رَبَّنَا ظَلَمْنَا أَنْفُسَنَا <sup>سكته</sup> وَإِنْ لَّمْ تَغْفِرْ لَنَا وَتَرْحَمْنَا  
لَنَكُونَنَّ مِنَ الْخُسِرِينَ ○

*Rab-ba-naa za-lam-naa an-fu-sa-naa wa il-lam tagh-fir la-naa wa tar-ham-naa la-na-koo-nan-na mi-nal khaa-si-reen*

Translation: O our Lord, we have wronged ourselves; and if Thou forgive us not and have not mercy on us, we shall surely be of the lost.

(7:24)

Allah is Gracious, provides for us, and forgives us despite our shortcomings. Human beings are not perfect. Only Allah is a Perfect being. That is why we admit to our weaknesses in this prayer and ask Allah for His forgiveness. If Allah forgives us and has mercy on us, we can overcome all our limitations with His Help. However, if we manage to lose Allah's Mercy and Allah's Forgiveness, we become those unfortunate people who have lost priority in God's eyes. We do not want to lose Allah's love and mercy. We want to remain among His beloved people, and this prayer reminds us to admit our weaknesses and ask for forgiveness.

**Exercise 2.25: Memorize the prayer for Allah's mercy and its translation.**

**Exercise 2.26: Fill in the blanks for the translation of this prayer.**

O our \_\_\_\_\_, we have \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves; and if Thou  
\_\_\_\_\_ us not and have not \_\_\_\_\_ on us, we shall  
\_\_\_\_\_ be of the \_\_\_\_\_.



## For Mercy and Forgiveness

رَبِّ اغْفِرْ وَارْحَمْ وَأَنْتَ خَيْرُ الرَّاحِمِينَ ○

*Rab-bigh-fir war-ham wa an-ta khai-rur-raa-hi-meen*

Translation: My Lord, forgive and have mercy and Thou art the Best of those who show mercy. (23:119)

Allah is Gracious, and He loves us more than we can understand. He provides for us even before we ask Him. As humans, we cannot be perfect, and therefore we do make mistakes. The Holy Qur'an has taught us to ask for forgiveness for our mistakes from our Creator, the All-Merciful and All-Forgiving Allah.

**Exercise 2.27: Memorize the prayer for mercy and forgiveness and its translation.**

**Exercise 2.28: Fill in the blanks for the translation of this prayer.**

And say, My \_\_\_\_\_, forgive and have \_\_\_\_\_  
and Thou art the \_\_\_\_\_ of those who \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.



## Quranic Surahs

### Surah Al-A'la

In the Name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

Glorify the name of thy Lord, the Most High,

Who creates and perfects,

And who designs and guides,

And who brings forth the pasturage,

Then turns it black, rotten rubbish.

We shall teach thee the Qur'an, and thou shalt forget it not

Except as Allah wills. Surely, He knows what is open and what is hidden.

And We shall facilitate for thee every facility.

So go on reminding; surely, reminding is profitable.

He who fears will heed;

But the most wretched will turn aside from it,

He who will enter the great Fire.

Then he will neither die therein nor live.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ①  
سَبِّحِ اسْمَ رَبِّكَ الْأَعْلَى ②

الَّذِي خَلَقَ فَسَوَّى ③

وَ الَّذِي قَدَّرَ فَهَدَى ④

وَ الَّذِي أَخْرَجَ الْمَرْعَى ⑤

فَجَعَلَهُ غُثَاءً أَحْوَى ⑥

سَنُقَرِّئُكَ فَلَا تَنْسَى ⑦

إِلَّا مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ إِنَّهُ يَعْلَمُ  
الْجَهْرَ وَ مَا يَخْفَى ⑧

وَ نَيْسِرُكَ لِلْيُسْرَى ⑨

فَذَكِّرْ إِنْ نَفَعَتِ الذِّكْرَى ⑩

سَيَذَكِّرُ مَنْ يَخْشَى ⑪

وَ يَتَجَنَّبُهَا الْأَشْقَى ⑫

الَّذِي يَصْلَى النَّارَ الْكُبْرَى ⑬

ثُمَّ لَا يَمُوتُ فِيهَا وَ لَا يَحْيَى ⑭

Verily, he, indeed, will prosper who purifies himself,  
And remembers the name of the Lord and offers Prayers.

But you prefer the life of this world,

Whereas the Hereafter is better and more lasting.

This, indeed, is what is taught in the former Scriptures-

The Scriptures of Abraham and Moses.

قَدْ أَفْلَحَ مَنْ تَزَكَّى ۝١٥

وَذَكَرَ اسْمَ رَبِّهِ فَصَلَّى ۝١٦

بَلْ تُوْثِرُونَ الْحَيَاةَ الدُّنْيَا ۝١٧

وَ الْآخِرَةُ خَيْرٌ وَأَبْقَى ۝١٨

إِنَّ هَذَا لَفِي الصُّحُفِ الْأُولَى ۝١٩

صُّحُفِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَ مُوسَى ۝٢٠

### Commentary of Surah Al-A'lā

The Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> used to recite Surah Al-A'lā in the first rak'ah of Eid and Friday prayers and the first rak'ah of Vitr prayers. There are reminders in this surah for believers to reflect on Allah's names and to glorify Him. The perfect example in this regard is the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>, who surpassed everyone in his remembrance and praise of Allah. In the third verse, it is said that God is the One Who creates and perfects. This means that God has bestowed us with the faculties necessary for our advancement and has placed in us the seed of progress. With the proper use of our spiritual and mental faculties, we can become a reflection of God's attributes.

The reference to the dying pasturage is to create an understanding about why the Qur'an supersedes other holy books that came before it. Just as some things in nature have a short shelf life and are meant for a specific time, previous scriptures were meant for a particular group of people or for a specific time. However, there are other more permanent natural phenomena, like the sun, the moon, and the stars, whose usefulness to man has been there from the beginning and shall continue. The Qur'an is like those natural phenomena which will remain useful to man until the end of time.

This surah tells us that the Holy Qur'an is:

1. Easy to commit to memory
2. That its teachings are adaptable to all times, cultures, and people for all times to come
3. That Qur'anic injunctions are wise and rational

All these factors combine to make the Qur'an an easy book to follow and implement.

**Exercise 2.29 Memorize the Arabic of Surah Al-A'lā.**

**Exercise 2.30: Fill in the blanks for the statements below.**

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> used to recite Surah \_\_\_\_\_ during the \_\_\_\_\_ rak'ah of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ prayers.

By reflecting on \_\_\_\_\_ qualities and using our \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ faculties, we can become a reflection of \_\_\_\_\_ attributes.

The Holy Qur'an is like the \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_ because it is a phenomenon whose usefulness to man will continue until the end of time.



## Surah Al-Inshirāh

In the Name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

Have we not opened for thee, thy bosom

And removed from thee, thy burden

Which had well nigh, broken thy back

And we exalted thy name?

Surely there is ease after hardship.

Aye, surely there is ease after hardship.

So when thou art free, strive hard.

And to thy Lord, do thou attend wholeheartedly.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝  
 اَلَمْ نَشْرَحْ لَكَ صَدْرَكَ ۝  
 وَوَضَعْنَا عَنْكَ وِزْرَكَ ۝  
 الَّذِيْ اَنْقَضَ ظَهْرَكَ ۝  
 وَرَفَعْنَا لَكَ ذِكْرَكَ ۝  
 فَاِنَّ مَعَ الْعُسْرِ يُسْرًا ۝  
 اِنَّ مَعَ الْعُسْرِ يُسْرًا ۝  
 فَاِذَا فَرَغْتَ فَانصَبْ ۝  
 وَاِلٰى رَبِّكَ فَارْغَبْ ۝

### Commentary of Surah Al-Inshirāh

Surah Al-Inshirāh was revealed in Mecca during the second or third year of the Holy Prophet's<sup>sa</sup> call to prophethood. Even though during this time, the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> was not a well-known man around Arabia, he soon rose to be one of the most followed and honored men in religious history.

Allah recognizes that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has been given a very hefty burden to bear in this surah. He was responsible for turning the moral condition of a people who were deeply entrenched in their immoral ways and also for bringing all of humanity under the fold of Allah's message. Twice in this surah, however, Allah mentions the coming of ease after hardship, which signifies that Islam will have two periods of back-breaking hardships followed by ease, and ultimately victory over its opponents. The first time was that of the Holy Prophet's<sup>sa</sup> when people were ignorant to Allah's message. The second time will be that of the latter days.

### Exercise 2.31: Memorize the Arabic of Surah Al-Inshirāh.

Prayers

For Success in Calling to Allah

رَبِّ اشْرَحْ لِي صَدْرِي ۝ وَيَسِّرْ لِي  
 أَمْرِي ۝ وَاحْلُلْ عُقْدَةً مِّنْ لِّسَانِي ۝  
 يَفْقَهُوا قَوْلِي ۝

*Rab-bish-rah-lee sad-ree wa yas-sir-lee am-ree wah-lul-'uq-da-tanm-mil-li-saa-nee yaf-qa-hoo qau-lee.*

O my Lord, open up for me my heart, and ease for me my task, and untie the knot of my tongue, that they may understand my speech.

(Surah Tā Hā, vv. 26-29)

This prayer is taken from the Holy Qur'an, and was recited by prophet Moses<sup>as</sup> when he was assigned the task of taking the message of Allah to the Pharaoh.

This prayer sheds light on some essential qualities that are needed in a person who wishes to spread the message to others.

1. The person must be inspired with zeal and enthusiasm for this mission and must possess strong arguments to support the cause.
2. The teachings must be easy to comprehend.
3. Good speaking skills are helpful.
4. The person should always be on the lookout for opportunities where the message can be heard with respect and attention.

**Exercise 2.32: Memorize this prayer of Prophet Moses<sup>as</sup> and its translation.**

## For a Righteous End of Life

○ رَبَّنَا أَفْرِغْ عَلَيْنَا صَبْرًا وَتَوَفَّنَا مُسْلِمِينَ

*Rab-ba-naa af-righ 'a-lai-naa sab-ran-wa ta-waf-fa-naa mus-li-meen*

O our Lord, pour forth upon us steadfastness and cause us to die resigned unto Thee. (Surah Al-A'r āf, v. 127)

This is another prayer taken from the Holy Qur'an from the time of the Pharaoh. Pharaoh was an Egyptian king who thought that he was God. He was cruel to the people of Prophet Moses<sup>as</sup> and would threaten death and painful crucifixion to any who would oppose him. When people began to recognize the signs of Prophet Moses<sup>as</sup> as true messages from Allah, they offered this prayer in response to the Pharaoh's persecution.

**Exercise 2.33: Memorize the prayer for a righteous end of life and its translation.**





## Quranic Surahs

### Surah Al-Duhā

In the Name of Allah, Most Gracious,  
Most Merciful

By the brightness of the forenoon,

And by the night, when its darkness  
spreads out,

Thy Lord has not forsaken thee, nor  
is He displeased with thee,

Surely, thy latter state is better for  
thee than the former,

And thy Lord will soon give thee, and  
thou wilt be well-pleased.

Did He not find thee an orphan and  
take thee under His care,

And found thee lost in love for thy  
people and provided thee with  
guidance for them,

And found thee in want, and  
enriched thee?

So the orphan, oppress not

And him who seeks thy help, chide  
not,

And the bounty of thy Lord, proclaim.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝۱

وَ الضُّحٰی ۝۲

وَ الَّیْلِ اِذَا سَجٰی ۝۳

مَا وَدَّعَكَ رَبُّكَ وَ مَا قَلٰی ۝۴

وَ لَلْاٰخِرَةُ خَیْرٌ لَّكَ مِنَ الْاُوْلٰی ۝۵

وَ لَسَوْفَ یُعْطِیْكَ رَبُّكَ فَتَرْضٰی ۝۶

اَلَمْ یَجِدْكَ یَتِیْمًا فَاوٰی ۝۷

وَ وَجَدَكَ ضَالًّا فَهَدٰی ۝۸

وَ وَجَدَكَ عَائِلًا فَاَغْنٰی ۝۹

فَاَمَّا الْیَتِیْمَ فَلَا تُقَهَّرْ ۝۱۰

وَ اَمَّا السَّائِلَ فَلَا تَنْهَرْ ۝۱۱

وَ اَمَّا بِنِعْمَةِ رَبِّكَ فَحَدِّثْ ۝۱۲

### Commentary of Surah Al-Duhā

Surah Al-Duhā is the 93rd chapter of the Holy Qur'an. There is a powerful prophecy in this surah regarding the fact that every passing day of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> would be better than the last and that this progress would continue until he would be able to complete his mission. The remarkable triumphs that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> achieved are the fulfillment of this prophecy.

The surah also recognizes the status of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> as an orphan who had lost his caregivers multiple times. First, the demise of his father, then mother. Then, the demise of his grandfather, Hadrat Abdul-Muttalib and then

Hadrat Abu Talib, his uncle. Despite these great losses, the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> was loved by countless companions in his lifetime and even until today, he is loved like no other man.

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> was a man who was deeply engrossed by the love of Allah and for Allah's sake he wished for nearness to Allah and the ways to gain that nearness were shown to him. This surah points out the fact that while the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> may have been born as a poor orphan, he was the undisputed master of Arabia at the time of his demise. In the last three verses, Allah commands the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> and his followers to remember these favors of His. The best way to remember these favors is to pay them forward to other orphans and those who need help and to proclaim the greatness of Allah.

### Exercise 2.34: Memorize the Arabic of Surah Al-Duhā.

#### Surah Al-Tīn

In the Name of Allah, Most  
Gracious, Most Merciful

By the Fig and the Olive,

And by Mount Sinai,

And by this Town of Security,

Surely, We have created man in  
the best make;

Then, if he works iniquity, We  
reject him as the lowest of the low,

Except those who believe and  
do good works; so for them is an  
unending reward.

Then what is there to give the lie  
to thee after this with regard to the  
Judgment?

Is not Allah the Best of Judges?

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ①

وَالتِّينِ وَ الزَّيْتُونِ ②

وَ طُورِ سَيْنِينَ ③

وَ هَذَا الْبَلَدِ الْأَمِينِ ④

لَقَدْ خَلَقْنَا الْإِنْسَانَ فِي أَحْسَنِ

تَقْوِيمٍ ⑤

ثُمَّ رَدَدْنَاهُ أَسْفَلَ سَافِلِينَ ⑥

إِلَّا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ

فَلَهُمْ أَجْرٌ غَيْرُ مَمْنُونٍ ⑦

فَمَا يُكَذِّبُكَ بَعْدُ بِالذِّكْرِ ⑧

أَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِأَحْكَمِ الْحَكَمِينَ ⑨

**Commentary of Surah Al-Tin**



In the first three verses of this Surah, “The Fig,” “The Olive,” “Mount Sinai,” and “This Town of Security” have been invoked as witnesses to support the claim that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> would succeed in his mission. These four symbols represent four periods in the history of human evolution. “The Fig” represents the era of Prophet Adam<sup>as</sup>, “The Olive” that of Prophet Noah<sup>as</sup>, “Mount Sinai” that of Prophet Moses<sup>as</sup> and “This Town of Security” represents the birthplace of Islam.



Man is born with a pure nature and a tendency to do good and, Allah has given him freedom of will and action to aid with the process of moral progress. Allah has sent prophets to help man achieve his moral goals, and if he does not use good judgment, rejects the divine message, and opposes God’s messengers, he will be punished by Allah, who is the best Judge.

**Exercise 2.35: Answer the questions below.**

**Use the commentary of the Holy Qur’an and research when this Surah was revealed.**

**Four symbols were mentioned in this surah which represent four periods of evolution in human history. Complete the following table with this information.**

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Period of Evolution</b>
The Fig	
The Olive	
Mount Sinai	
Town of Security	

**Exercise 2.36: Memorize the Arabic of Surah Al-Tin**

## Surah Al-Qadr

In the Name of Allah, Most Gracious,  
Most Merciful

Surely, We sent it down on the Night  
of Destiny.

And what should make thee know  
what the Night of Destiny is?

The Night of Destiny is better than a  
thousand months.

Therein descend angels and the  
Spirit by the command of their Lord  
– with every matter.

It is all peace till the rising of the  
dawn.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝۱

اِنَّا اَنْزَلْنٰهُ فِیْ لَیْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ ۝۲

وَ مَا اَدْرٰکَ مَا لَیْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ ۝۳

لَیْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ خَیْرٌ مِّنْ اَلْفِ شَهْرٍ ۝۴

تَنْزَلُ الْمَلٰٓئِکَةُ وَ الرُّوْحُ فِیْهَا بِاِذْنِ

رَبِّهِمْ ۚ مِنْ کُلِّ اَمْرِ ۝۵

سَلٰمٌ ۙ هِیَ حَتّٰی مَطَلَعِ الْفَجْرِ ۝۶

### Commentary on Surah Al-Qadr

This surah speaks to the majesty of the Holy Qur'an and the blessed nights during which the Holy Qur'an was revealed. The Holy Qur'an fully meets all of mankind's spiritual and moral needs and so, the nights in which it was revealed were decreed and the future patterns of man's moral journey were set. While this reference to a specific night may point towards the one night when the revelation of the Qur'an began, it could also mean the entire 23-year period of revelation during the time of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>.

When we are told that the night of destiny is better than a thousand months, we must keep in mind that in Arabic 1,000 is the highest number count that can be expressed. It does not just mean a literal 1,000 months, but can also mean countless months. This is to show that the period of enlightenment during the time of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> is infinitely better than any other period in history. This is also why in the last verse we are told, "It is all peace", because the period during the time of a prophet or a reformer gives mental peace and tranquility to his followers.

### Exercise 2.37: Memorize the Arabic of Surah Al-Qadr.

**Exercise 2.38: Fill in the blanks.**

Surely, we sent it down in the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.

The Night of Destiny is better than a \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_.

It is \_\_\_\_\_ till the rising of the dawn.

**Prayers**

**In Favor of Our Spouses and Children**

رَبَّنَا هَبْ لَنَا مِنْ أَزْوَاجِنَا وَذُرِّيَّتِنَا قُرَّةَ أَعْيُنٍ  
وَاجْعَلْنَا لِلْمُتَّقِينَ إِمَامًا ۝

*Rab-ba-naa hab-la-naa min az-waa-ji-naa wa dhur-riy-yaa-ti-naa qur-ra-ta  
a'-yu-nin-waj-'al-na lil mut-ta-qee-na i-maa-maa*

O our Lord, grant us of our spouses and children the delight of our eyes and make each of us a leader for the righteous. (Surah Al-Furqān, v. 75)

Even though you are young, praying for yourself and your future family is important. Who we spend our lives with and the children we may have are blessings which we cannot control. It is therefore, very important, to ask Allah for His Help in making these relationships pleasant for us in the future.

When we pray to Allah to ask him to make us leaders for the righteous, we are asking for Allah's help in making sure that we do not cause others to go astray by any of our words or actions. It is important to be aware of the influence you may have on others and to pray that it is always a positive one.

**Exercise 2.39: Memorize this prayer in favor of our spouses and children and its translation.**

## For Protection Against the Enemy

اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّا نَجْعَلُكَ فِي نُحُورِهِمْ وَنَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنْ شُرُورِهِمْ

*Al-laa-hum-ma in-naa naj-'a-lu-ka fee nu-hoo-ri-him wa na-'oo-dhu-bi-ka  
min shu-roo-ri him*

O Allah! We make You a shield against the enemy and we seek Your protection against their evil designs. (*Abu Dawood Kitab-us-Salat*)

This is a prayer of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. Islam teaches us to avoid conflict and fighting except in cases of self-defense. When we face any enmity, we are instructed to pray to Allah for His help and protection in this manner by the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>.

**Exercise 2.40: Memorize this prayer of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>.**

**Exercise 2.41: Complete the translation below using the words in the word bank below.**

O our Lord, grant us of our \_\_\_\_\_ and children, the \_\_\_\_\_ of our \_\_\_\_\_ and make each of us a \_\_\_\_\_ for the \_\_\_\_\_.

O Allah! We make You a \_\_\_\_\_ against the \_\_\_\_\_ and we seek Your \_\_\_\_\_ against their \_\_\_\_\_.

DESIGNS	RIGHTEOUS	DELIGHT	LEADER	EYES
EVIL	PROTECTION	SPOUSES	SHIELD	ENEMY







# Basics of Islam

## Hadith

## A Muslim is a Mirror

الْمُؤْمِنُ مِرْآةُ الْمُؤْمِنِ -

*al-mu'-mi-nu mir-aa-tul-mu'-min*

Translation: A believer is a mirror of a believer.

*(Abu Dawud, Kitab al-Adab)*

A mirror always provides the truest image of a person. It does not distort the image, and it gives an honest and unbiased representation. If there is something wrong, it shows that in due proportion. It does not exaggerate or belittle the weakness or strengths found in the object or person it is reflecting. Similarly, we should not disclose the weaknesses of others. We should not present them in a biased or unfair manner. We must refrain from disgracing or mocking others about their shortcomings. We can only advise others politely if we wish to correct them in any way. We should not disclose the weaknesses of others, as this is unhelpful and often is hurtful. Abu Huraira<sup>ra</sup> reported that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said,



الْمُؤْمِنُ مِرْآةُ أَخِيهِ وَالْمُؤْمِنُ أَخُو الْمُؤْمِنِ يَكْفُ عَلَيْهِ  
ضَيْعَتَهُ، وَيَحُوطُهُ مِنْ وَرَائِهِ -

Translation: A believer is the brother of another believer. He protects him against loss and defends him behind his back.

**Exercise 3.12: Memorize the Arabic and translation of this hadith.**

## Criteria of a True Muslim

الْمُسْلِمُ مَنْ سَلِمَ الْمُسْلِمُونَ مِنْ لِسَانِهِ وَيَدَيْهِ-

*Al-mus-li-mu man sa-li-mal mus-li-moo-na mil-li-saa-ni-hee wa ya-di-hee*

Translation: A (true) Muslim is he who keeps protected other Muslims from his tongue and hands.

*(Bukhari, Kitab-ul-Iman)*

Muslims are followers of Islam, which is a religion that teaches peace. A true follower of Islam demonstrates peace in their words and their actions. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> taught us that we must embody the principles of peace and harmony through all our actions. In this hadith, we are taught that the safety of all others depends on how we carry ourselves. We must keep our hands and words occupied in caring and peaceful actions and not use them to hurt others. We should never attack anyone physically or verbally. Verbal attacks can include unjustly accusing someone, using harsh language, or speaking ill of them behind their backs.

**Exercise 3.13: Memorize the hadith about the criteria of a true Muslim and its translation.**

**Exercise 3.14: In your own words, talk about what it means to protect other Muslims from your tongue? Give examples, if possible.**

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



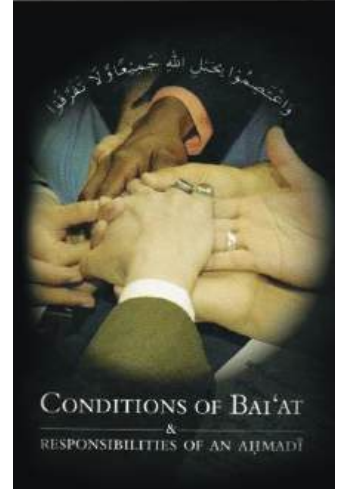
---

## Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi

*Note: Please have students read the actual course book "Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi" for full understanding of the concepts. The online book can be found here: <https://www.alislam.org/library/books/Conditions-of-Baiat-Responsibilities-of-Ahmadi.pdf>*

### Condition 3

That he/she shall regularly offer the five daily prayers in accordance with the commandments of God and the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>; and shall try his/her best to be regular in offering the Tahajjud (pre-dawn Nawaafil prayers) and invoking Durud (blessings) on the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>; that he/she shall make it his/her daily routine to ask forgiveness for his/her sins, to remember the bounties of God and to praise and glorify Him.



**Exercise 3.15: Answer the questions with reference to the third condition of Bai'at.**

**What is the 3rd condition of Bai'at about?**

- Associating partners with Allah
- Trespasses of the eye
- Salat
- All of the above

**What is istighfar? (page 66)**

---



---



---

**Condition 4**

That under the impulse of any passions, he/she shall cause no harm whatsoever to the creatures of Allah in general, and Muslims in particular, neither by his/her tongue, nor by his/her hands nor by any other means.

**Exercise 3.16: Answer the questions with reference to the passages in the book. Page numbers from the course book, *Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi*, are provided.**

**How can you cause harm to another with your tongue?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**Read the incident of Hadrat Husain<sup>ra</sup> on page 78 of the course book. What verse did the slave quote?**

- a. Surah Al 'Imran, verse 135
- b. Surah Al-Baqarah, verse 135
- c. Chapter 135

**Read the hadith on page 84 of the course book. Where does anger come from and what is a suggested method of dissipating anger?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**Condition 5**

That he/she shall remain faithful to God in all circumstances of life, in sorrow and happiness, adversity and prosperity, in felicity and trial; and shall in all conditions remain resigned to the decree of Allah and keep himself/herself ready to face all kinds of indignities and sufferings in His way and shall never turn away from it at the onslaught of any misfortune; on the contrary, he/she shall march forward.

**Exercise 3.17: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book *Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi*. Page numbers from the course book are provided where applicable.**

**Define the word decree.**

-----

-----

**What is the importance of trials in the life of a believer? (page 95 of the course book)**

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

**Exercise 3.18: Keep the 5th condition in mind and research the history of Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif. (page 100 of the course book)**



## Tarbiyat Topics

### Patience in Everyday Life

We often hear the saying, "Patience is a Virtue". But what is patience? Patience means that we remain steadfast through any sort of trials. Another meaning of patience is to exercise our courage to avoid evil and follow Allah's commandments. Sometimes in life, we face difficulties and hardships, and it seems like these problems will never end, and that we don't have the strength to face such times. It is important to know that difficult times are a part of life, and that Allah has blessed us with the capacity to deal with all sorts of troubling situations. We should pray to Allah to give us the strength to deal with such times with patience and courage. In the Holy Qur'an Allah says,

"O ye who believe! Seek help with patience and prayer; surely, Allah is with the steadfast." (2:154)

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said, "Real patience is at the first stroke of a calamity."

To practice patience in our daily life, we need to:

- Become closer to Allah.
- Ask Allah for forgiveness.
- Ask Allah for help.
- Be mindful of our prayers.
- Forgive others.
- Be firm in our faith.
- Be patient in order to earn the companionship of Allah.

It is important to remember that victory is not possible without patience and Allah's Help. During difficult times, remember to recite the following prayer.



○ وَأَيُّوبَ إِذْ نَادَى رَبَّهُ أَنِّي مَسَّنِيَ الضُّرُّ وَأَنْتَ أَرْحَمُ الرَّاحِمِينَ

Translation: And remember Job when he cried to his Lord, saying, 'Affliction has touched me, and Thou art the Most Merciful of all who show mercy. [21:84]

**Exercise 3.19: Think about a time in your life when you were in trouble and needed Allah's help. Were you patient and prayerful? If not, what did you do to handle the problem?**



## Why I Believe in Islam

The central principle of all religions is the existence of God, and man's relationship with Him. Islam claims that the Creator of this universe is a living God and that He reveals Himself to His creatures in this age in the same way He revealed Himself in the past.

The word Islam is derived from the Arabic word "salima" which means peace, purity, submission and obedience. So, the word Islam means the path of those who are obedient to Allah and who establish peace with Him and His creatures. Followers of Islam are called Muslims.

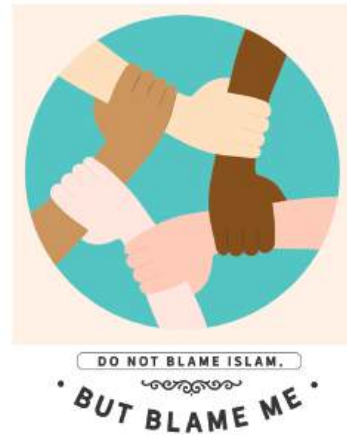


There are many reasons to believe in Islam:

- Islam provides faith with the certainty of knowledge that satisfies one's intellect and compels it to admit to the need for religion.
- Islam does not base itself upon the experience of people who have passed away but invites everybody to a personal experience of that which it teaches and guarantees.
- Islam teaches us that no conflict exists between the Word of God (religion) and the Work of God (science). It does not ask us to ignore the laws of nature and to believe in things which are contrary to them.
- Islam does not seek to crush one's natural desires but guides them along the right channels.
- Islam instructs those endowed with strength to help the oppressed and the weak.
- Islam teaches us not to take responsibility for ourselves and also to take on the responsibility of dealing fairly with others.
- Islam draws attention to the rights of parents and the duties which children owe to their parents.
- Islam has laid special stress upon the education and upbringing of girls. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has said, "A person who brings his daughter up well and gives her a good upbringing and education, thereby earns paradise."
- Islam instructs the wealthy to look after the needs of the poor.
- Islam instructs the poor not to look with envy upon that which has been given to other people, rather to work hard with the talents God has bestowed upon them.
- Islam insists upon fair authority of all human beings, including the rulers and the ruled masses. It says to the rulers, that the authority vested in them is not their private property but is a trust. Those in power should discharge the obligations of that trust to the utmost, as upright and honest people, and should carry on governance in consultation with the people. To the ruled, Islam gives the power of choice to choose their leaders wisely. This is a gift from God and should, therefore, be used carefully. The masses should invest only in candidates who deserve and earn the authority to govern. After vesting this authority in them, they should be given full cooperation.

We should not rebel against our chosen leaders, because in doing so, we inadvertently demolish our democracies.

- Islam teaches that no nation should transgress against another nation nor should one state transgress against another. Nations and states should cooperate with each other to advance the interests of all humanity. It forbids some nations and states and individuals from uniting with each other to conspire against other nations and states or individuals. On the other hand, it teaches that nations and states and individuals should covenant with each other to restrain each other from aggression and to cooperate with each other in advancing those that are weaker.



In short, Islam provides conditions of peace and comfort for all those who may wish to tread a path prescribed by it.

**Exercise 3.20: Answer the short questions below.**

**What is the central principle of all religions?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**What does the word Islam mean?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**Why do we believe in Islam?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**Why does Islam instruct the wealthy to look after the needs of the poor?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**What happens if nations transgress against each other?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**Exercise 3.21: Fill in the blanks using information in the topic above.**

Islam claims that the \_\_\_\_\_ of this universe is a  
\_\_\_\_\_ God.

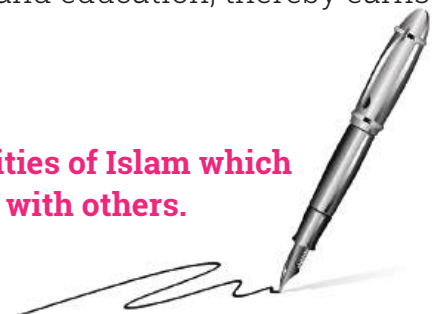
The word Islam is derived from the \_\_\_\_\_ word  
“ \_\_\_\_\_ ” which means peace.

Islam says no conflict can exist between the \_\_\_\_\_ of God  
(religion) and the \_\_\_\_\_ of God (science).

Islam draws attention to the \_\_\_\_\_ of parents and the  
\_\_\_\_\_ which children \_\_\_\_\_ to their parents.

Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has said, “A person who brings his \_\_\_\_\_ up well  
and gives her a good \_\_\_\_\_ and education, thereby earns  
\_\_\_\_\_.”

**Exercise 3.22: Write a short essay about the qualities of Islam which speak to you the most. Share your essay in class with others.**



## Guidance in the Holy Qur'an

The Muslims believe that God speaks to His chosen servants through revelation. It is through this process, spiritual knowledge and wisdom is given to man by God. The knowledge received through revelation is the most true form of learning.

Revelation can be of many kinds. It may comprise of ordinances, laws and injunctions. It may be prophetic in nature and bring knowledge of future events, bring great insights into matters of material or spiritual nature, convey God's goodwill, pleasure and love; or it may be the medium of God's warning, displeasure and rebuke.

The nature of revelation varies according to circumstances and the spiritual station of the recipient. Muslims believe that of all revelations and divine communications, the most complete, the most perfect and the most comprehensive is the Holy Qur'an.

ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ لَا رَيْبَ فِيهِ هُدًى لِّلْمُتَّقِينَ ﴿٣﴾

Translation: This is a perfect Book; there is no doubt in it; it is a guidance for the righteous. (2:3)

The Qur'an is the Holy Book or the Scriptures of the Muslims. It lays down for them the law and commandments, codes for their social and moral behavior and contains a comprehensive religious philosophy. It is the ultimate source of the Islamic law and a complete guidance for the Muslims. Besides its proper name, the Qur'an is also known by the following names:

*Al-Huda* – The Guide

*Al-Haqq* – The Truth

*Al-Tanzil* – The Revelation

*Al-Bayan* – The Explanation

*Al-Nur* – The Light

*Al-Hikmat* – The Wisdom

هُدًى لِّلنَّاسِ وَبَيِّنَاتٍ مِّنَ الْهُدَىٰ وَالْفُرْقَانِ -

Translation: A guidance for mankind with clear proofs of guidance and discrimination. (2:186)

This means that the Holy Qur'an has three qualities.

1. It guides people to the knowledge of the faith that had disappeared.
2. It sets forth the details of such knowledge as had been briefly stated.
3. It sets forth the decisive word concerning matters over which differences had arisen and thus, distinguishes between truth and falsehood.

The Qur'an is the only revealed book whose delivery or message is absolutely

unrestricted. Whereas all other holy books were meant for specific times and specific peoples, the Qur'an is meant for all times and all peoples.

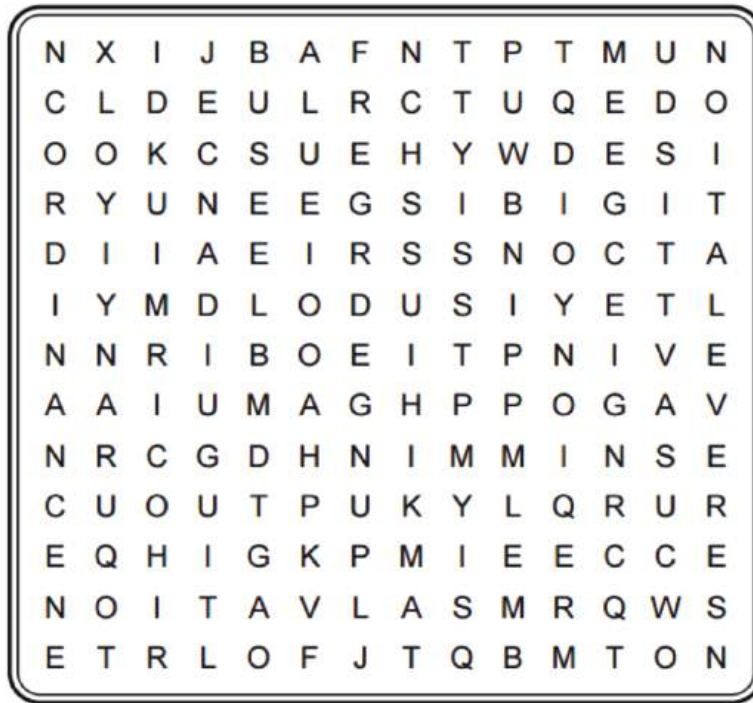
Regarding the Holy Qur'an, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> said, "Remember the Holy Qur'an is a fountainhead of real blessings and a source of salvation. Those who do not practice on the Qur'an, it is their own fault. One group among those who do not practice Quranic injunctions are those who do not have any faith in it. They do not consider it to be Word of God. These people remain very remote. However, how regrettable and astonishing it is if those who believe that it is Word of God and is a healing formula of salvation do not practice on it. Many among them have not even read it in their entire lives. Thus, the example of people who are negligent and careless about Word of God is like a person who knows that such and such spring is extremely pure and sweet and fresh and its water is an elixir and heals many ailments, he has certain knowledge of this yet, in spite of this knowledge and in spite of being thirsty and embroiled in many ailments he does not go near it. How unfortunate and ignorant of him. He should have drunk from this spring and having satiated from its delicious and healing water cherished it. Yet, despite being aware of this, he is as distant from it as an unaware person."

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> wrote in his book, "The Qur'an has opened the ways of true and perfect salvation and all the rest is its reflection. Therefore, study the Qur'an with care and hold it very dear with a love that you have not for anything else. As God has said to me, 'All good is contained in the Qur'an'."  
(Kashti-i-Nuh)



**Exercise 3.23: Solve the puzzle and review the key concepts in the search words.**

- GUIDANCE
- ORDINANCE
- HIKMAT
- SALVATION
- WISDOM
- REVELATION
- SCRIPTURES
- BLESSINGS
- HUDA
- LIGHT
- INSIGHT
- QUR'AN



**Exercise 3.24: Research and find five more names of the Holy Qur'an, not mentioned in this lesson.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_



## Tarbiyat Stories

### A Blind Boy

A blind boy sat on the steps of a building with a hat by his feet. He held up a sign that said, "I am blind, please help." There were only a few coins in the hat. A man was walking by. He took a few coins from his pocket and dropped them into the hat. He then took the sign, turned it around, and wrote some words. He put the sign back so that everyone who walked by would see the new words.

Soon the hat began to fill up. A lot more people were giving money to the blind boy. That afternoon the man who had changed the sign came to see how things were. The boy recognized his footsteps and asked, "Were you the one who changed my sign this morning? What did you write?"

The man said, "I only wrote the truth. I said what you said but in a different way." The man had written: "Today is a beautiful day and I cannot see it."

Do you think the first sign and the second sign were saying the same thing? Of course, both signs told people the boy was blind. But the first sign simply said the boy was blind. The second sign told people they were so lucky that they were not blind. Should we be surprised that the second sign was more effective?

### Discussion Questions

- How can a poor child, living in the streets of a poor country, be better than the one living in a rich house of a very rich country?
- Think of two children, one who has everything and one who does not. Can we tell which of them is more favored in the eyes of Allah?
- Can you name some blessings which may be more important than material blessings?



a

### Exercise 3.25: What is the lesson learned from this story?

---



---



---



## Who Will Save You Now?

There was a small community that lived in an isolated area. Weak and defenseless, the people of this community lived in fear and anxiety, because they were being relentlessly attacked by a gang of bandits. Can you imagine how scary it would be to live in constant fear and of such unfair and cruel bandits? Like wild animals, they recognized no code of ethics besides their own hunger and desires. Anyone they could conquer was fair game.

The head of state decided to take it upon himself to lead his forces into the area and punish the ones who were spreading terror and violating the peace and security of this area. News of this move spread quickly and soon the bandits knew that the authorities were coming after them in force. The bandits were compelled to flee the area and seek refuge in the surrounding mountains. They hid among the highest peaks they could find, hoping to save themselves. They knew that being at the top of the mountain was risky, but they hoped to at least be able to scope out the forces that were being sent against them.

When the forces arrived, they found that the bandits had abandoned the area and taken up positions on a nearby mountain to survey the situation from a safe vantage point. Without the threat of immediate danger, the leader of the armed force let down his guard and took a moment to rest under the shade of some trees. Exhausted, he soon drifted off to sleep.



One of the bandits was watching this with interest, and said to himself, "This is an excellent opportunity to subdue the leader while he is sleeping. Then no one will stand in our way."

Exercising the utmost stealth, he climbed down from the mountain and snuck across to where the leader was sleeping. As he approached the tree, he noticed the leader's sword beside him. He looked left and right to make sure that no one else was around. Being the thief that he was, he quickly snatched up the sword and then pointed it in the leader's face.

The bandit sneered and exclaimed, "Who will save you now?"

The leader woke up to these words and saw the bandit standing, threateningly above his head, sword in hand. He realized immediately that the glowering

bandit had disarmed him and was threatening to kill him. Imagine what you would do in such a situation?

The leader kept his composure, straightened himself up and looked at his attacker calmly. After listening patiently to the bandit's threats he answered, "Allah."

The bandit felt a shudder go through his body and down his arm. He dropped the sword. Quick as it fell, the leader snatched it up and came upon the bandit with it, repeating the same question that the bandit had asked him moments before, "Who will save YOU now?"

The bandit replied in terror, "No one!" The leader asked, "Why do you not say Allah?" Even in this terrifying situation, the leader was trying to teach this man that Allah is the only Savior. In keeping with his noble character, the leader pardoned this man and said to him, "Very well, you can go free."

When the man returned to his tribe, he told them the whole incident and praised this leader whose mercy and forgiveness were beyond belief. This led him and his tribe to accept Islam.

So, who was this great leader whose faith in Allah saved him then and always? He was none other than Muhammad, the Prophet of God, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him.

**Discussion Questions**

- Can you see how Allah changes the hearts and minds of people in impossible situations?
- Think of this story and others where Allah makes the impossible possible. Relate it back to the Quranic verse, "He says, Be and it is"?

**Exercise 3.26: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

## A Pretend Dinner

A man who was traveling ended up in the city of Medina. He found his way to the mosque where the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> was sitting and told him that he was hungry. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> sent somebody to his own house to find out if there was any food available to feed this hungry man. Unfortunately, the answer came back that there was nothing but water in the house. So, the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> asked the other companions if anyone would take this man to their house and feed him as he was a traveler. One of the companions agreed and took this traveler to his house.



When they entered, the companion asked his wife if there was enough food to feed their guest. She replied that there was only a little bit and it would hardly be enough to feed their children. The companion thought quickly and told his wife not to feed the children and instead lull them to sleep. After the children were asleep, she prepared what little food they had in the house and invited their guest to the dining area. As soon as they sat down, the companion put out all the lights so that the room was dark enough that the guest could not see his hosts.

The guest was offered the food and began eating. The companion and his wife pretended to eat and made sounds as if they were swallowing the food. The guest felt happy that his hosts were enjoying the meal with him, so he kept eating until he was completely full. Little did he know that they were only pretending to eat so that he would be comfortable. They wanted their guest to have his fill and not to be worried about leaving any for the hosts.

The next morning the guest and the companion went back to the mosque. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> called over his companion and said to him that God in heaven smiled over what you did last night. Although it must have been so hard to suppress their own desire and need, by making this sacrifice, the companion and his family had won God's pleasure and love.

### Discussion Questions

- What is the importance of treating your guests with respect?
- How will the guest feel about such a situation when they find out about sacrifices made by the host?
- Why is Allah happy when He sees someone doing something good that no one else can see?

**Exercise 3.27: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

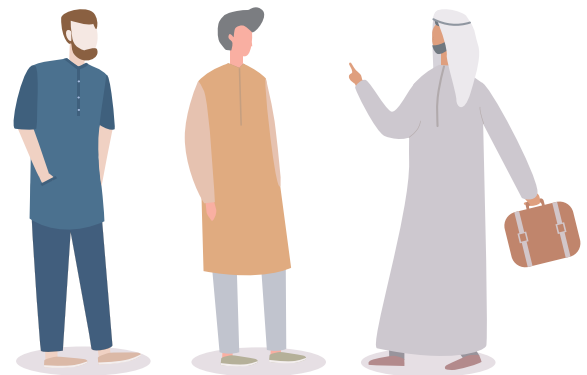
**Donation in the Dark**

A noble elderly man was in urgent need of \$10,000. When he expressed his need to a group of his friends, they all listened and hoped and prayed that his needs would be met. It was a large sum, and no one seemed able to help. Later that day, one of the men in this group came back to the elderly man and gave him a bag full of \$10,000.

The next day, the elderly man, out of his gratefulness, began to praise the man who had given him the large sum of money. He did so in front of a large gathering of other men. The man who donated the money was also present in that gathering. When he heard everyone else praising him and looking at him with wonder and surprise, he got up and politely asked for that money to be returned to him. He expressed that he may have made a mistake in giving the elderly man such a large sum of money.

When everyone in the gathering heard this request, the praises turned into condemnation and criticism. The people accused this man of just showing off his wealth. They thought he was making excuses just to get his money back.

Later that day, the same man took a bag full of \$10,000 and walked the dark streets to get to the elderly nobleman's house. Hiding under the night sky, he knocked on the nobleman's door. When he was let into the house, the man explained that he only wanted to help for the sake of God and not for the praises of the other men in the



gathering today. He asked the elder to promise that he would not mention this money to anyone else. After handing over his donation, he quietly left the elderly man's home.

Hearing this, the elder man began to weep as he thought about how people would continue to insult this person for as long he lived. They would continue to deride him and slander him, not knowing what the truth was. However, the man who donated his money said he was not worried. Why? He believed that his respect and honor was only in the happiness of Allah and not of the people.



**Discussion Questions**

- How can you keep your intentions pure when donating for a good cause?
- It may be necessary to announce your good deeds in some exceptional cases, please discuss when and why that may be needed?

**Exercise 3.28: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

-----

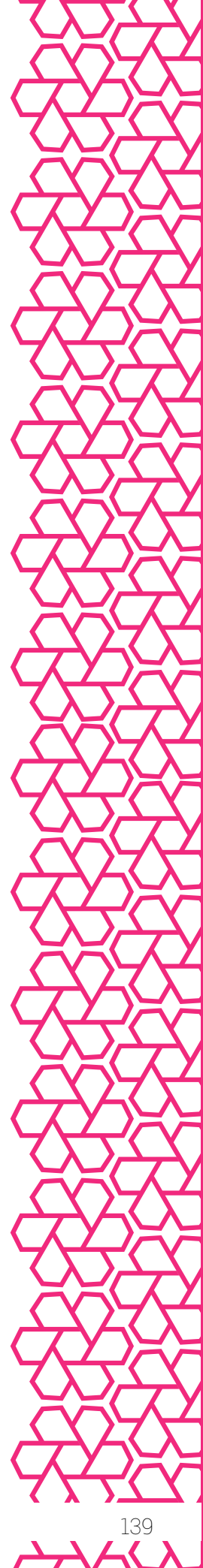
-----

-----

-----

-----

-----





### Why Have You Forsaken Me?

Over 2000 years ago, a child was born in the city of Bethlehem, near present day Jerusalem. He grew up to become a great prophet of God, who started calling his fellow human beings to oneness of God. Some wicked people of the town claimed that he was spreading falsehood about God. They hatched a plot by inciting the governor of the Roman Empire to punish him to death for claiming to be a prophet of God. In those times, the Roman Empire was a mighty force and they ruled a big part of the world. The governor of the region had tremendous power over the fate of the people. He was powerful but under pressure from the clergy, and fearing rioting in his city, he reluctantly agreed to crucify an innocent man.

In those times, people who committed serious crimes were punished to death slowly and publicly by putting them on the cross. Their hands were nailed on both sides of the cross and their legs were nailed to the post. They would also put a thorny crown on their heads to cause more pain. It was decided by the top leaders of that time that this holy man will be put on the cross to show everyone that he was an imposter and not a real prophet. He would be nailed to a cross along with two other thieves who were given the same punishment.

Before he was taken to the cross, this holy man of God spent a night alone in a jail cell knowing what was to come the next day. He prayed to Allah, "My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?" Meaning, "My God, My God, why have you abandoned me?" In this hour of painful waiting, this holy man reaches out to God for help. Being a man of faith, he was not afraid of dying, but he was afraid of a shameful death because that would indicate to people that he was not a real messiah and that God was not on his side. He knew that only God can save him for this disgrace. Of course, God would never let a prophet of His, die a painful or shameful death.

The next day, all three men were placed on the cross. Usually, criminals were left on the crosses for days. However, according to God's plans, these three men were taken off the cross in a matter of three or four hours and it was assumed that all must have died by this time. The legs of the other two criminals were broken by the soldiers, but not of this holy man. He appeared to have passed away to onlookers, but in reality, he had only fainted. Before leaving, one of the guards pierces an arrow in his ribs to ensure his death. He thought he was dead but when he pierced his body, blood gushed out which was actually a sign of his life.

The guards left and handed over the presumed dead body to his friends and family. His family quickly realized that he was alive so they took him to a cave, where they kept him for three days, treated his wounds and were able to

successfully revive him, just as God had willed. He was then able to leave the area to continue his journey as a prophet of God.

Before leaving, he met a few of his disciples who could not believe that he was still alive. He then left the region to preach oneness of God in other parts of the world.

You may have figured out by now that this holy man was Hadrat Isa<sup>as</sup>, also known as Jesus in non-Muslim world. He was saved by God because only He is the ultimate Savior, Who gave us life, Who causes us to die and Who will resurrect us in the next life.

**Discussion Questions**

- Can you relate a story about how Allah saved you or your parents from an impossible situation? Ask your elders, you may learn a lot!
- Talk about how God can be seen when the best doctors give up on a patient but the patient continues to recover and live a normal life for years after their rejection.
- Can you see God when you think about soldiers who may have been severely injured in a war but can continue to live a meaningful life?

**Exercise 3.29: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----





## Hadith

### Be the First to Greet

إِنَّ أَوْلَى النَّاسِ بِاللَّهِ مَنْ بَدَأَهُمْ بِالسَّلَامِ

*In-na au-lan-naa-si bil-laa-hi mam ba-da-'a-hum bis-sa-laa-mi*

Allah prefers those who hasten to be the first to greet others (saying As-Salamu 'Alaikum). (*Abu Dawood*)

Saying something virtuous to someone is itself an act of virtue. When we meet a fellow Muslim, what could be a more virtuous expression of greeting than saying "As-Salamu 'Alaikum – May peace be with you". The Holy Qur'an commands us to excel each other in the performance of good deeds. So, if a Muslim tries to be the one who says, "As-Salamu 'Alaikum" first, he can earn Allah's pleasure and nearness to Him.

**Exercise 3.30: Memorize the hadith, "Be the First to Greet" and its translation.**

### The Upper Hand

أَلْيَدُ الْعُلْيَا خَيْرٌ مِّنَ الْيَدِ السُّفْلَى

*Al-ya-dul-'ul-yaa khai-rum-mi-nal ya-dus-suf-laa*

The upper hand is better than the lower hand. (*Muslimi-Kitabuz Zakat*)

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has directed the wealthy not to turn down anyone's request for help, and give Sadaqa (charity) as sometimes even a fragment of a date given as charity could save you from punishment.

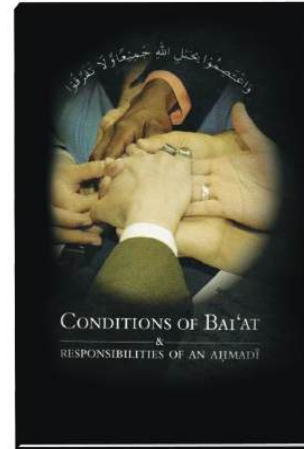
On the other hand, he advised the poor to try to abstain from begging, by saying that the giving hand is better than the receiving hand. This valuable piece of advice by the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> infused a spirit of dignity and self-respect among the companions.



**Exercise 3.31: Memorize the hadith, "The Upper Hand" and its translation.**

## Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi

*Note: Please have students read the actual course book "Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi" for full understanding of the concepts. The online book can be found here: <https://www.alislam.org/library/books/Conditions-of-Baiat-Responsibilities-of-Ahmadi.pdf>*



### Introduction

When the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> made his claim and invited all righteous souls to respond to his call, he published the **Ten Conditions of Bai'at** for all who wished to join him with a covenant of allegiance.

### Condition 6

That he/she shall refrain from following un-Islamic customs and lustful inclinations and shall completely submit himself/herself to the authority of the Holy Qur'an; and shall make the Word of God and the Sayings of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> the guiding principle in every walk of his/her life.

**Exercise 3.32: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.**

**What are some innovations we face in our daily lives that keep us away from Allah?**

---

---

---

**Read the first paragraph on page 114. What two steps are given to help create a love for the Holy Qur'an?**

---

---

---

**Name the two keys to finding God and His blessings from page 117.**

---

---

---

**Condition 7**

That he/she shall entirely give up pride and vanity and shall pass all his/her life in humbleness, cheerfulness, forbearance and meekness.

**Exercise 3.33: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.**

**What form of arrogance is found in wider circles? (page 124)**

---

---

---

**Read the hadith by Abdullah bin Mas'ud. What is the difference between being arrogant and being elegant? (page 126)**

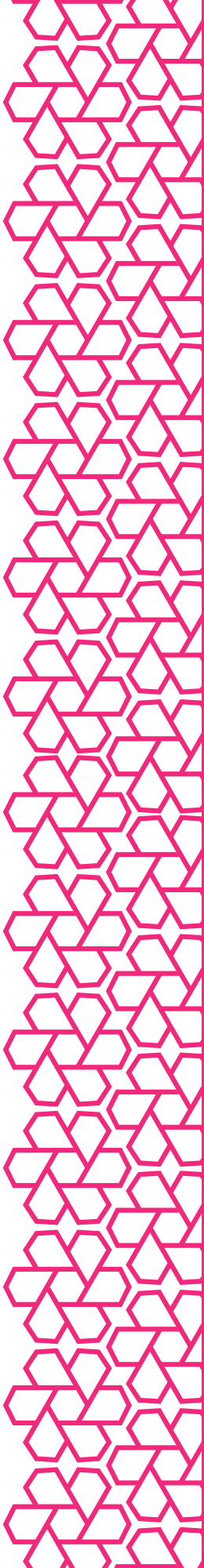
---

---

---

Notes

Lined writing area with horizontal dashed lines.



## Hadith

### Be Moderate

خَيْرُ الْأُمُورِ أَوْسَطُهَا۔

*Khair-rul-u-moo-ri au-sa-tu-haa*

In every matter, moderation is best. (*Chehl Ahadith*)

Being moderate provides us a good balance in fulfilling our obligation to Allah and our duties to mankind. We should be moderate in our hobbies, our diet, our spending and all duties that we perform for ourselves or for others.

**Exercise 3.34: Memorize the hadith, "Be Moderate" and its translation.**

### Keep Good Company

الْمَرْءُ عَلَى دِينِ خَلِيلِهِ فَلْيَنْظُرْ أَحَدَ كُمْ مَنِ يُخَالِلُ۔

A person may adopt his friend's religion (or way of life), hence he should watch who he befriends. (*Abu Dawood*)

The people who we are friends with and whom we associate with will ultimately determine who we will turn out to be. Your friends will not only influence your personality but also your actions. Not only that but other people will also judge you based on who you hang out with. The importance of having good friends cannot be stressed enough. Whether you admit it or not, we all can fall under the influence of peer pressure. This can lead us to making bad decisions just because our friends are doing the same. Bad company destroys good virtues and will force you to stray from the path towards Allah.

**Exercise 3.35: Memorize the hadith, "Keep Good Company" and its translation.**

**Exercise 3.36: Complete the translations of the ahadith below.**

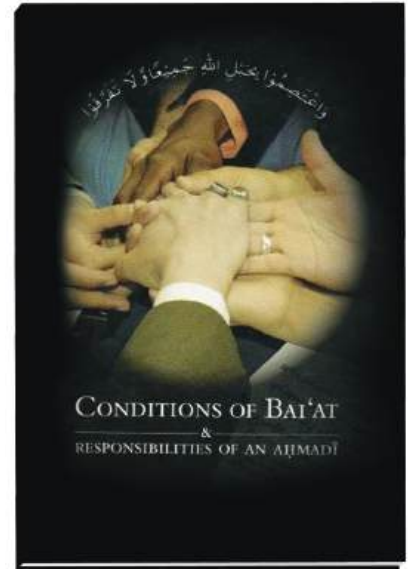
In \_\_\_\_\_ matter, \_\_\_\_\_ is best.

A person may adopt his \_\_\_\_\_ (or way of life), hence he should \_\_\_\_\_ who he \_\_\_\_\_.



## Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi

*Note: Please have students read the actual course book "Conditions of Bai'at and Responsibilities of an Ahmadi" for full understanding of the concepts. The online book can be found here: <https://www.alislam.org/library/books/Conditions-of-Baiat-Responsibilities-of-Ahmadi.pdf>*



### Condition 8

That he/she shall hold faith, the honor of faith, and the cause of Islam dearer to him/her than his/her life, wealth, honor, children and all other dear ones.

**Exercise 3.37: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.**

**Read the first paragraph on page 140 and the hadith on page 142. What two things have we been asked repeatedly to do to honor our faith?**

-----  
-----

**Why does the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> stress the certainty of faith so much? (page 145)**

-----  
-----  
-----  
-----



**Condition 9**

That he/she shall keep himself/herself occupied in the service of God's creatures for His sake only; and shall endeavor to benefit mankind to the best of his/her God-given abilities and powers.

**Exercise 3.38: Answer the question with reference to passages in the book.**

**What are the six obligations that a Muslim has towards other Muslims? (page 155)**

-----

-----

-----

**Condition 10**

That he/she shall enter into a bond of brotherhood with this humble servant of God, pledging obedience to me in everything good, for the sake of Allah, and remain faithful to it till the day of his/her death; that he/she shall exert such a high devotion in the observance of this bond as is not to be found in any other worldly relationship and connection demanding devoted dutifulness.



**Exercise 3.39: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.**

**The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> believes that his blessings are a result of what actions? (page 181)**

-----

-----

**What does it mean to shatter the cross? (page 183)**

-----

-----





# History of Islam

## Life of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> – Part II

### The Grand Heavenly Signs of the Eclipse of the Moon (March 21, 1894); and the Sun (April 6, 1894)

One of the prophecies of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> about the coming of Imam Mahdi was that during the month of Ramadan, a lunar eclipse would take place on the first night among the three possible nights (13th, 14th and 15th). A solar eclipse would take place on the middle day among the three possible days (27th, 28th and 29th). (Dar-Qutni, p. 100)

These grand heavenly signs were fulfilled in 1894 in the Eastern hemisphere of the earth and in 1895 the same divine sign was fulfilled in the Western hemisphere of the earth. The lunar eclipse occurred on the 13th of Ramadan while the solar eclipse occurred on the 28th of Ramadan. In this way, God displayed His remarkable sign in favor of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> throughout the world.



**Exercise 4.5: Write a short answer for the question below.**

**What were the heavenly signs in favor of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

### Journey to Dera Baba Nanak - Dec. 30, 1895

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, accompanied by some of his devoted companions, went to Dera Baba Nanak for research and exploration. After a great deal of effort, he successfully discovered the famous gown of **Hadrat Baba Nanak**. It was a pleasant, but shocking revelation to all who viewed this gown to see that verses from the Holy Qur'an were written all over it. This discovery was the realization of two dreams which the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> had seen in 1872.

In those dreams, Hadrat Baba Nanak had told the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> that he believed in the faith of Islam.

### **Invitation to Mubahala (Prayer Duel), and the Confirmation of his Truth by Hadrat Khawaja Ghulam Farid of Chacharan Sharif - March 1896**

When the Ulema instituted a decree of disbelief against the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in 1892, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> responded to it by inviting the opponent leaders of religious groups to a prayer duel with him. However, at that time no Maulawi took up the challenge. Then, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> issued a public notice inviting the leaders of various religious groups and Sufis to enter a prayer duel with him. He entered the names of all the prominent religious leaders and Sufis in this invitation. In response to this invitation to a prayer duel, **Hadrat Khawaja Ghulam Farid**, who was a saint, wrote a letter to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in Arabic, in which he confirmed the truth of the claim of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, and expressed his great respect for the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

### **The Convention of Great Religions - December 1896**

In December 1896, this convention took place from the 26th to the 28th in Islamia College, Lahore. It was proposed by some Hindu notables, who had invited the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, and the leaders of several other religions to lecture on the qualities of their own religious faith. These lectures, which were to be read out, were prepared in response to a questionnaire consisting of five questions that had been circulated among all the speakers a few days before the convention took place.

On December 21, 1896, a few days before the convention, God Almighty revealed to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> that the essay written by him for this lecture would be superior to every other lecture. This essay was called "Philosophy of the Teachings of Islam."

When Hadrat Maulawi Abdul Karim Sialkoti<sup>ra</sup> started to read out this essay written by the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, the audience of this convention showed their excitement and appreciation by loud cheers. It was on the unanimous demand of the audience, who wanted to ensure that the essay of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was read out completely, that the convention had to be extended for another day, and it concluded on December 29th.

After the convention, the review of its proceedings that was published in the contemporary popular press, along with the opinion of people in general, made it clear that the essay written by the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and read out

by Hadrat Maulawi Abdul Karim Sialkoti<sup>ra</sup>, was indeed regarded as superior to every other lecture. Thus, God's revelation, which had been widely publicized a few days before this convention began, came manifestly true.

**Exercise 4.6: Write short answers for the questions below.**

**What is the significance of the gown of Hadrat Baba Nanak?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

**Who was Hadrat Khawaja Ghulam Farid, and what did he write in his letter to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>?**

-----

-----

-----

**Prophecy Regarding the Death of Pandit Lekh Ram - March 6, 1897**

A famous Arya leader, Pundit Lekh Ram, who was notorious for using abusive language against the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>, was killed by an unknown assassin on the 6th of March 1897 at 6:00 p.m, one day after Eid.

His death came about in complete accord with the prophecy of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, which he published on February 20, 1893. In this prophecy, God had revealed to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> that the death of Pandit Lekh Ram was to occur as a punishment due to his abusive language against the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. The prophecy also stated that Pandit Lekh Ram would die a day after Eid-ul-Adha within a six-year term starting from the date of February 20, 1893.

**Decision of the Case of Attempted Murder - August 23, 1897**

A **false case** of attempted murder was registered in a court of law, against the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, by the Christian missionary Dr. Henry Clark, to avenge his defeat at the hands of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in an earlier debate, known



as the “Debate of the Holy War” (Jang-e-Muqqadas). However, the Deputy Commissioner of Gurdaspur, who was heading that Court, clearly acquitted the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> of all charges filed against him. A man named Abdul Hameed bore false witness and was exposed as a perjurer. Since the whole case rested upon his testimony, no charges could be brought against the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

An interesting parallel in history was the false case brought against the earlier Messiah: Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup>, due to a conspiracy of the Jews of his time. Pontius Pilate found Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup> innocent of all charges that were filed against him. However, Pilate was afraid of the Jews. So, he gave his orders to put Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup> on the cross.

In contrast, the Magistrate in the case of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, **Captain Douglas**, was very inclined to carry out justice. In order to be fair, he had to disregard the opinions and feelings of the Christian missionaries, who were of the same religion as he was. Douglas ultimately acquitted the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> of all false charges. By doing so, the Magistrate Captain Douglas became a significant figure in the history of Ahmadiyyat.

### **The Prophecy of the Plague - February 6, 1898**

On February 6, 1898, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> publicized his prophecy through a public advertisement stating that the plague would spread in Punjab. The prophecy was based on one of his visions.

At that time, the plague was not reported anywhere in Punjab. Therefore, the opponents of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> ridiculed him and laughed at this prophecy. However, during the next winter, the cities of Jalandhar and Hoshiarpur fell prey to the plague, and this epidemic started to claim victims in other areas as well.

### **Publication of Masih Hindustan Main - Jesus in India - April 1899**

In 1899, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> surprised the Christian and Muslim world alike by revealing that Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup> was buried in the city of Srinagar in Kashmir, India, at the location called Khaniyar. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> gave a detailed discussion of this whole episode in his book, *Masih Hindustan Mein (Jesus in India)*, published in April 1899, which also included a historical account of the life and times of Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup>. This book proved to be the fulfillment of an essential part of the divine mission of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, which was to **break the false doctrine of the cross**. This mission of the Messiah shattering the cross was prophecized in earlier times through the Hadith of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. By explaining how Allah saved Jesus<sup>as</sup> from an undignified death on



the cross and his subsequent natural death in Kashmir many years later, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was able to overturn the Christian doctrine that Jesus<sup>as</sup> was raised from the cross in some supernatural manner because he was the literal son of God. In this way, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> broke the doctrine of the cross.

**Exercise 4.7: Write short answers for the questions below.**

**What doctrine of Christianity is proven wrong in the book, Jesus in India?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

**Who was Pandit Lekh Ram, and what was the significance of his death?**

-----

-----

-----

**What similarity is there between Hadrat Isa<sup>as</sup> (Jesus) and the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, regarding the false case? How does this parallel further prove the claim of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

**The Revealed Sermon on Eid-ul-Adha – Khutbah Ihamiyya - April 11, 1900**

This sermon was revealed to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> by God, and according to divine direction, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> gave this sermon in Arabic in

Aqsa Mosque. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was given special strength and power to express himself in Arabic. It was divine revelation which gave him this extraordinary power to speak in Arabic. The sermon was a matchless scholarly feat. It was published under the title “**Khutba Ilhamiyya**” (The Revealed Sermon) on October 17, 1902.

**Exercise 4.8: Write a short answer for the question below.**

**What is the significance of Khutbah Ilhamiyya?**

-----

-----

-----

**Ijaz-ul-Masih - February 20, 1901**

This famous book of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> contains commentary on the first chapter of the Holy Qur’an, **Surah Al-Fatihah**. This commentary is written in Arabic and consists of deep meanings and uses such refined Arabic. Those who appreciate the language openly acknowledge that it is impossible to write such an eloquent commentary of Surah Al-Fatihah without clear guidance from God. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> invited every religious scholar, including the Pir of Golra Sharif, Mehr Ali Shah, to write a commentary in response to his. However, nobody came forward to compete with the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in writing the Arabic commentary.

**Naming the ‘Muslim Ahmadiyya Sect’ - 1901**

In the population census of 1901, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> registered his community under the name **Musalman Firqah Ahmadiyya** or the Muslim Ahmadiyya Sect and explained through a public statement the reason for choosing this name.

**The Statement and Title ‘Clarification of an Error’ - Nov. 5, 1901**

In 1901, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> clarified that those Ahmadis who denied his being a prophet of God were mistaken. He explained that in the Divine revelations he had received, words such as ‘Messenger,’ ‘Apostle,’ and ‘Prophet’ appeared not once but hundreds of times. Even in Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya, which was published 22 years before his clarification in 1901, these words

appeared in no small number.

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> explained that the definition of prophethood, popular among the Muslims of the time, was wrong. So, to reform the existing beliefs regarding prophethood and to clarify his own stand on this topic, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> published a statement titled, "Aik Ghalti ka Izala" or Clarification of an Error. It clarified that his prophethood was not in any way independent of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>, that he was **subordinate to the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>**, and that he believed in the **Holy Qur'an as the last and final law of Allah**.

### Sign of the Plague and Remarkable Progress of the Jamaat - 1901-1902

On the 6th of February 1898, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> had prophesized the spread of the plague. When people started dying of the plague in the country, then the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> invited people on March 17, 1901, to turn to God. However, his opponents increased their ridicule and laughter at this prophecy. Then, God revealed His displeasure, and in 1902, the plague had become an epidemic that caused people to die in overwhelming numbers.

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> wrote a book on the 5th of October 1902, while the plague was raging. This book was entitled Kashti-i-Nuh (**Noah's Ark**). In his book, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> declared that, according to a revelation from God, a true Ahmadi did not need to get himself inoculated, as a preventive measure against the plague. The divine revelation said:

إِنِّي أُحَافِظُ كُلَّ مَنْ فِي الدَّارِ-

I will protect all those who are within your house.

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> explained that this divine promise included those who were within the physical boundary of his house and all those who were the true believers in Ahmadiyyat. It was a divine manifestation that there were no cases of Ahmadis dying of the plague during this terrible epidemic and that too, without the protection of any preventive inoculation. Having witnessed this sign of divine protection, hundreds of people came into the fold of Ahmadiyyat.

### The Martyrdom of Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif<sup>ra</sup> - July 14, 1903

**Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif<sup>ra</sup>** was a prominent member of the court of the Ruler of Kabul in **Afghanistan**. He was stoned to death in a very barbaric manner, at the instigation of fanatic religious leaders, simply because he had accepted Ahmadiyyat. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> gave a detailed account of this violent act, in his book Tadhkirat-ush-Shahadatain.

He wrote in Urdu - translated below:

“O Land of Kabul! Bear witness, that a grave crime was committed upon thee. O unfortunate soil! You have fallen in the sight of God, because you are the venue of this great injustice.”

On the very next day, after this incident took place, a terrible epidemic of cholera broke out in Kabul, and not only several of those people died who were responsible for this stoning to death, but several thousand other citizens of Kabul also died of cholera.

### **The Revelation – ‘An Eastern Power, and the Critical Condition of Korea’ - 1904**

When this revelation, ‘An Eastern power, and the critical condition of Korea,’ came to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, Japan was not a very powerful country. In 1905, Japan and Russia went to war against each other to capture Korea. Japan defeated Russia, even though Japan was a comparatively smaller country. Japan then occupied Korea and emerged as a great Eastern power.

In this manner, this revelation of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was fulfilled with amazing accuracy.

### **Prophecy about the First World War - April 1905**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> wrote a long poem, as part of Volume 5 of his famous book Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya. Towards the end of this poem, he gave a description of a “promised earthquake” (i.e., an event that would shake up the world). One verse of this poem, about this great disaster is:

“Even the mighty Czar would find himself in a miserable condition, when that hour will approach.”

It seems that World War I, which had not yet begun, was shown to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, in the form of a great earthquake. During this war, the mighty King of Russia (Czar) met with a miserable fate, as prophesized by the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

### **Exercise 4.9: Write short answers for the questions below.**

**When did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> issue the first written statement of his status of prophethood?**

-----

**In the divine revelation: "I will protect all those who are within your house," what is meant by 'house'?**

---

---

---

**Who was Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif<sup>ra</sup>?**

---

---

---

**What happened in Kabul the day after Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif<sup>ra</sup> was martyred?**

---

---

---

**Booklet 'Al-Wasiyyat' or 'The Will' - December 1905**

Towards the end of 1905, repeated revelations from God came to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, which informed him of his approaching death. Therefore, he wrote a booklet, Al-Wasiyyat (The Will), to advise the Jamaat. The scheme of the **Behishti Maqbarah** (Heavenly Graveyard) was also laid out in this booklet.

**Dr. Dowie's Death - March 9, 1907**

Dr. Alexander Dowie, an American, claimed to be a prophet of God in the latter part of 1899 or in early 1900. He soon became famous throughout the United States. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> invited him for a **prayer duel** twice — once in 1902 and then in 1903. These invitations were publicized by the U.S. newspapers as well. Dr. Dowie reacted by calling the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> by the abusive name of 'the silly Muhammadan Messiah' (God forbid!) and said:

"... do you think that I will stoop so low as to accept the challenges thrown at

me from people who are as insignificant as flies or mosquitoes. If I decide to kill them, I will need to simply stomp them under my boot.”

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> prayed for Allah’s decision to come and punish the arrogant and abusive Dr. Dowie. In September 1905, he had a sudden attack of paralysis while he was addressing an audience. His followers soon revolted against him and dislodged him from his position under charges of financial misconduct and other irregularities.

Dr. Dowie’s end came when he died on the 9th of March 1907, in a state of humiliation. His humiliating end was prophesized two weeks before his death, by the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, in a statement entitled “Prophecy about a New Sign.” The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> declared Dr. Dowie’s miserable death to be a clear sign of the truth of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> of Islam. The U.S. newspapers also acknowledged the fact that the prophecy of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> came true.

### **Journey to Lahore and Revelations about Death - April 29, 1908**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> arrived in Lahore on April 29th, 1908, as wished by his wife. On May 9th, 1908, he had another revelation in Arabic - translated as:

Departure, then departure. God will bear all the burden.

This revelation informed him that the hour of his death was near.

### **A Feast for the Dignitaries of Lahore - May 17, 1908**

In keeping with the wishes of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, a banquet was arranged for the dignitaries and leaders of public opinion, in Lahore. On the insistence of the guests, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> spoke for two hours, before the food was served, and gave a detailed account of his claims and teachings and provided convincing refutation of all the objections raised against him by the opponents of Ahmadiyyat.

### **Proposal for a Public Lecture and the Book, ‘Paigham-e-Sulh’ - May 25, 1908**

In response to a suggestion by some people that he should give a public lecture, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> gave his approval and started to write an essay, entitled, Paigham-e-Sulh, (A Message of Reconciliation). Its objective was to bring about peace between the Hindus and the Muslims of India. During the writing of this essay, on May 20, 1908, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> received another Arabic revelation from God - translated as:

Departure, again a departure. Death is very close now.



Nevertheless, he continued working, completed his manuscript, and handed it over for publication on the afternoon of May 25, 1908. After the Asr prayer, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> delivered a short speech on the death of Jesus Christ<sup>as</sup>, and then started out on his daily walk.

**Demise of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> - May 26, 1908**

The same evening, after performing his Maghrib and Isha prayers, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> went to bed at his usual time. At around eleven at night, he woke up feeling sick. He became seriously ill, frequently falling unconscious during the night. Early in the morning, he asked, 'Is it prayer time?' Someone beside his bed replied, 'Yes Hudur, it is'. He started praying but he fell unconscious in the middle of his Prayer. When he recovered a little, he repeated the same question, 'Is it Prayer time?' and, 'O God, my beloved God!' By 10 a.m., his condition became critical, and at 10:30 a.m., our beloved Imam, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, passed away.

His age at the time of his death was a little over 73 years according to the solar calendar, and 75 years according to the lunar calendar, keeping with one of his revelations from God. May Allah bless the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, whose pure teachings brought about such a spiritual revolution which is continuing to spread throughout the world. No power on earth will ever be able to stop the spread of the message of Ahmadiyyat. In Sha Allah.

**Exercise 4.10: Write short answers for the questions below.**

**Who was Dr. Dowie, and what was his false claim?**

-----  
-----  
-----  
-----

**How was Dr. Dowie humiliated and proven false?**

-----  
-----  
-----



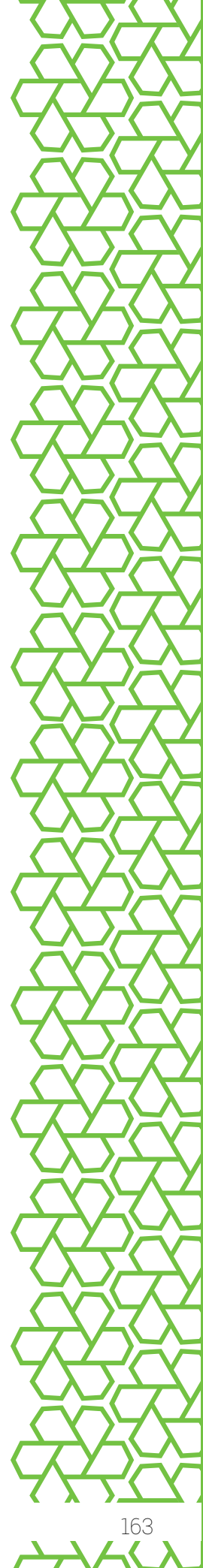
**What booklet did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> write before passing away?**

-----

-----

**When did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> pass away?**

-----



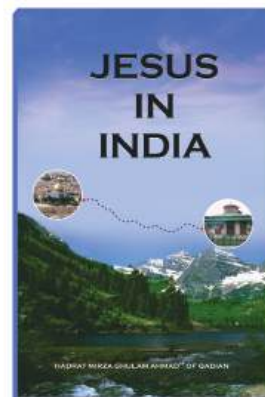
**Exercise 4.11: Match the key concepts from the life of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.**



Masih Hindustan Mein	A sikh leader whose gown had Qur'anic inscriptions written all over them
Baba Nanak	Aryan leader who was notorious for using abusive language against the Holy Prophet Muhammad <sup>sa</sup>
Khwaja Ghulam Farid	A book in which the revelations regarding the Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> 's death were revealed
Al-Wassiyat	Instead of accepting a prayer duel with the Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> , he accepted the truth in a letter.
Alexander Dowie	A book with a detailed commentary of Surah Al-Fatihah
Ijaz-ul-Masih	An American false prophet
Pandit Lekh Ram	A book detailing a historical account of the life and times of Jesus Christ <sup>as</sup>

## Life and Death of Jesus<sup>as</sup>

*Note: This is only a summary of the book. Please refer to the course book, [Jesus in India](#), for full understanding of the concepts. PowerPoint slides are also available online at <https://www.alislam.org/library/books/jesus-in-india-slides/>*



The book, *Jesus in India*, was written in 1899 by the founder of Ahmadiyya Muslim Jamaat, Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> of Qadian.

The book is about the **life of Prophet Jesus<sup>as</sup>**, and his rescue by God from a painful and shameful death on the cross. Since Prophet Jesus<sup>as</sup> was a man of God and not a false prophet, God would not have allowed him to die a disgraceful death. The book also details Jesus<sup>as</sup>'s eventual journey to India in quest of the lost tribes of Israel, whom he was responsible for gathering under his fold. He had foretold of his duty to accomplish this task to his disciples.

According to the divinely guided research of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, Jesus<sup>as</sup> passed through Nasibus, Iran, Afghanistan and eventually reached Kashmir, India. Jesus<sup>as</sup> made Kashmir his home, died there and lies buried in **Srinagar, Kashmir**.



Migration route of Prophet Jesus<sup>as</sup> after his deliverance from the cross.

Ahmadi Muslims believe that **Jesus<sup>as</sup> survived the crucifixion** because he was taken down from the cross in a state of unconsciousness – not death. There are several signs which point to the fact that Jesus<sup>as</sup> did in fact, survive the crucifixion. Each point is explained in detail by the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in his book. Here is a brief summary of this evidence:

1. Sign of Jonah<sup>as</sup>: Jesus<sup>as</sup> foretold he would survive just like Jonah<sup>as</sup> did.
2. Blood and Water: Gushed from the spear wound, a sign of a beating heart.
3. Prayer at Gethsemane: He prayed to be rescued from death on the cross.
4. Short Duration: Death on the cross is meant to take days, not hours.
5. Pilate's Plot: Having sympathy for Jesus<sup>as</sup>, he planned to save him.
6. Healing Herbs: Used for healing the living – not embalming the dead.
7. Unbroken Legs: This would have prevented death by respiratory distress.
8. His Denial: Of being an apparition, baring his wounds he called for food.

**Exercise 4.12: Choose the correct answer for the following questions.**

**Which statement appeals most to common sense?**

- a. A human being dies and comes back to life after some number of days.
- b. A human being looks to be dead but he is unconscious.
- c. God replaces a person with his exact resemblance to save him and takes him to the skies and keeps him alive for thousands of years.

**Why did Jesus<sup>as</sup> make the journey to the east?**

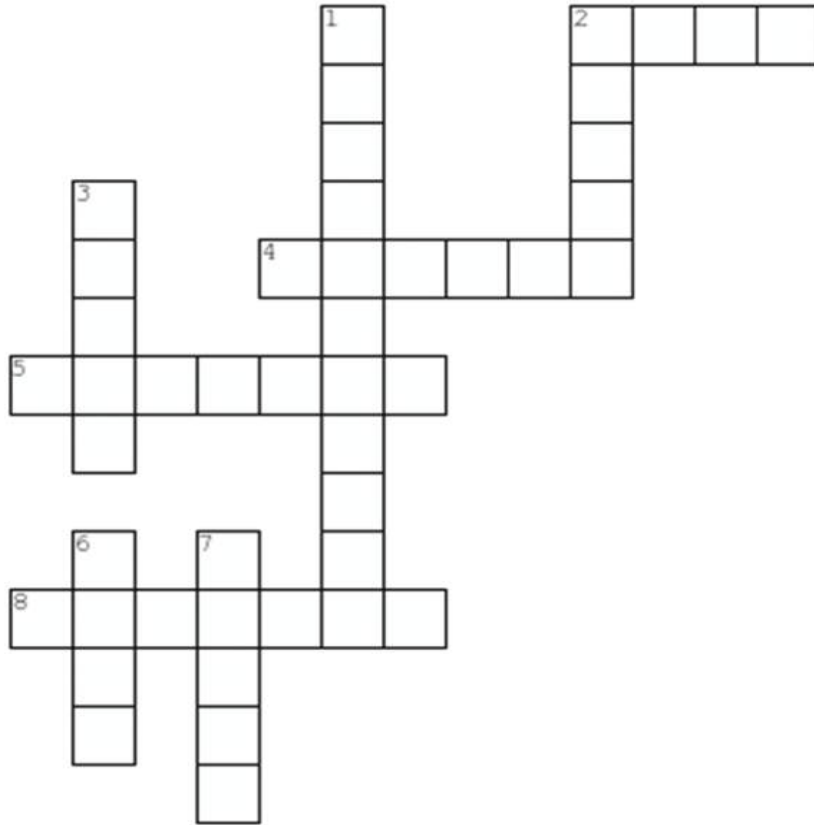
- a. He wanted to escape the western society.
- b. He was in search of the lost tribes of Israel.
- c. He was now a resurrected soul and could go anywhere.

**In order to show his disciples that he was, in fact, alive Jesus<sup>as</sup> denied being an apparition and even asked for food to eat to prove his humanity.**

TRUE

FALSE

**Exercise 4.13: Use the vocabulary from the summary of Jesus in India to complete the crossword puzzle below.**



**Across**

- 2. Jesus<sup>as</sup> asked his disciples for this to prove he was alive.
- 4. Pontius \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. Final resting place of Jesus<sup>as</sup>
- 8. Marham-e-Isa was a \_\_\_\_\_ balm applied to the body of Jesus<sup>as</sup> to heal his wounds.

**Down**

- 1. Jesus<sup>as</sup> survived this
- 2. Jesus<sup>as</sup> was not a \_\_\_\_\_ prophet.
- 3. Author of Jesus in India
- 6. These were left unbroken by the Roman guards.
- 7. Gushed from the side of Jesus<sup>as</sup>, showing he still had a beating heart

## Asharah Mubashsharah

The Asharah Mubashsharah are ten companions of Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> who were given the glad tidings of Paradise during their lifetime.

### **Hadrat Abu Bakr Siddiq<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Abu Bakr Siddiq<sup>ra</sup> was the first man to accept Islam and the first khalifa of Islam. He was with Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>, when the Prophet<sup>sa</sup> migrated from Mecca to Medina. He was Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>'s best friend and father-in-law.

### **Hadrat Umar Farooq<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Umar Farooq<sup>ra</sup> was the second Khalifa of Islam. He accepted Islam after listening to recitation of the Holy Qur'an. Before becoming Muslim, he was one of the biggest enemies of Islam. He later became the biggest defender of Islam. Message of Islam spread around the world during his time as Khalifa. He was also Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>'s father-in-law.

### **Hadrat Uthman Ghani<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Uthman<sup>ra</sup> was the third Khalifa of Islam. He was the fifth person to accept Islam upon preaching of Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup>. He was very rich and is known to have spent a lot of his wealth for the cause of Islam. The written copy of the Holy Qur'an was compiled during his Khilafat and under his direct supervision. He was Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>'s son-in-law.

### **Hadrat Ali bin Abi Talib<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Ali<sup>ra</sup> was the fourth Khalifa of Islam. When Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> brought the message of Islam, Hadrat Ali<sup>ra</sup> became the youngest person to accept Islam. Hadrat Ali<sup>ra</sup> stayed in the bed of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>, the night when the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> left Mecca for Medina. He was Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>'s first cousin and son-in-law.

### **Hadrat Talha bin Ubaidullah<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Talha<sup>ra</sup> embraced Islam upon the preaching of Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup>.

When Naufal, also known as Asad Quraish (Lion of the Quraish), heard about his conversion, he tied Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup> and Hadrat Talha<sup>ra</sup> together with a rope. Due to this, the two became known as 'Al-Qarinain' which means, the two tied together.

He was a member of the electoral college or Khilafat selection committee of



the third Khalifa. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> titled him as Talha Al-Khair (Talha, the excellent) and Talha Al-Jud (Talha, the benevolent). He was one of the first migrants.

### **Hadrat Zubair bin al Awwam<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Zubair<sup>ra</sup> became a Muslim during his early youth. His uncle became furious when he heard about his conversion and tortured him to make him abandon Islam. He would wrap Hadrat Zubair<sup>ra</sup> in a rug and have smoke inserted into his nostrils until he suffocated. His uncle would then comment that if he wishes to escape the torment, he must abandon Islam. But Hadrat Zubair<sup>ra</sup> never wavered in his faith.

### **Hadrat Abu Ubaidah ibn-al-Jarrah<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Abu Ubaidah<sup>ra</sup> was amongst the earliest to accept Islam, and did so through the preaching of Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup>. Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup> took him, Abdur-Rahman ibn Auf<sup>ra</sup>, Uthman ibn Maz'un<sup>ra</sup> and Arqam ibn Abi al Arqam<sup>ra</sup> to the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> so they could convert together.

### **Hadrat Abdul Rahman bin Auf<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Abdul Rahman ibn Auf<sup>ra</sup> was member of the electoral college of the third Khalifa. He migrated twice, first to Ethiopia and then to Medina.

He participated in all the battles and expeditions in the company of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. During the battle of Uhud, he had 21 injuries and broke two of his teeth. He was a wealthy trader and was known for his generosity.

### **Hadrat Sa'd ibn Abi Waqqas<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Sa'd<sup>ra</sup> embraced Islam at the age of 19. He was also a member of the electoral college of the third Khalifa. He participated in numerous battles and expeditions and showed his courage in the Battle of Uhud. He was also the commander of the army that defeated the King of Persia.

### **Hadrat Sa'eed ibn Zaid<sup>ra</sup>**

Hadrat Sa'eed<sup>ra</sup> was married to Hadrat Fatimah bint Khattab<sup>ra</sup>, sister of Hadrat Umar<sup>ra</sup>. Hadrat Sa'eed<sup>ra</sup> and his wife became Muslim when only a handful of people had accepted Islam and were also instrumental in the conversion of Hadrat Umar<sup>ra</sup>.



## Important Places & Artifacts

### The Holy Ka'bah

- ◇ The sacred heart of Islam.
- ◇ First house of worship, believed to have been built by Hadrat Adam<sup>as</sup>.
- ◇ Muslims face towards the Holy Ka'bah during their prayers.



### Qubbat as Sakhras - The Dome of the Rock

- ◇ This was the first Qibla (Qiblat-ul-Awwal) for Muslims.
- ◇ This is also known as Bait-ul-Muqaddas.
- ◇ Located on Temple Mount (also known as Mount Mariah) in the old city of Jerusalem.



### Mecca

- ◇ This is the birthplace of Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> and the holiest city for all Muslims in the world. It is in Saudi Arabia.
- ◇ Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> grew up in this city, declared himself to be a Prophet of Allah and migrated from this city at the age of 53 after severe persecution.
- ◇ This city has holiest mosque in Islam called Masjid-al-Haram which hosts the Holy Ka'bah. All Muslims point towards this holy place for their five daily prayers.



### Medina

- ◇ This is the second holiest place for all Muslims. It is also located in Saudi Arabia. This is where Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> is buried.
- ◇ Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> spent the last 10 years of his life in this city.



- ◇ This city has second holiest mosque in Islam called Masjid an-Nabawi.

### Karbala

- ◇ Karbala is a town in modern day Iraq. This is the town where the martyrdom of Hadrat Husain<sup>ra</sup> occurred, along with his family and a few companions, on the 10th of Muharram.



### Mount Arafat

- ◇ This is where Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> delivered his Farewell Sermon on 9th of Dhul-Hijjah.
- ◇ This mount is located 9 miles from Mecca.



### Mina

- ◇ In Mina, Hajj pilgrims perform the ritual stoning of three pillars, which represent Satan, on the last day of the Hajj.



### The Black Stone - Al-Hajar-ul-Aswad

- ◇ This is embedded on one corner of the Ka'bah.
- ◇ Its origins are unclear but it is known that Prophet Ibrahim<sup>as</sup> and Prophet Isma'il<sup>as</sup> used it while rebuilding the Ka'bah.
- ◇ From whichever direction, the pilgrim enters the enclosure and approaches the Ka'bah, he begins his circuit from the corner in which the Black Stone is placed.



### Tomb of Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>

- ◇ Prophet Muhammad's<sup>sa</sup> tomb is located inside Masjid an-Nabawi, along with the tombs of Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup> and Hadrat Umar<sup>ra</sup>.
- ◇ This tomb is situated at the location of what used to be Hadrat Aishah<sup>ra</sup>'s house.



### Cave Thaur

- ◇ This is the cave where Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> and Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup> took refuge during their 'hijrat' to Medina from Mecca.



### Cave Hira

- ◇ This is where Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> used to spend his time in prayers, especially prior to becoming a prophet.
- ◇ This is where the revelation of the Holy Qur'an began when the angel Jibreel<sup>as</sup> visited the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> during Ramadan.



### Zamzam Well

- ◇ Zamzam is the name of a famous water well now located inside Masjid al-Haram.
- ◇ Under the blazing sun, Hadrat Hajra ran seven times between the two hills of Safa and Marwa to look for water for her infant son Hadrat Isma'il<sup>as</sup>. When she returned after the seventh circuit, she found that water was coming up from the ground next to Hadrat Isma'il<sup>as</sup>.



### Qadian, India

- ◇ The birthplace and hometown of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, located in Punjab, India.
- ◇ It was previously known as Islampur and Qadi.
- ◇ It hosts Masjid Mubarak and Minarat-ul-Masih.
- ◇ The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>, and numerous other prominent companions of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> are buried here.





## Minaratul Masih

- ◇ Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup> prophesized that the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> would descend near a white minaret, east of Damascus. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> decided to literally fulfill this prophecy. He laid the foundation of this minaret on March 13, 1903.
- ◇ It is located in Qadian, close to Masjid Aqsa.



## Hoshiarpur, India

- ◇ When the Arya Samaj asked for a sign to prove the truthfulness of Islam the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> retreated to Hoshiarpur and spent 40 days in special prayers.
- ◇ During this time, he was given the glad tidings of a Promised Son, who would later come to be identified as Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmood Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>.



## Rabwah, Pakistan

- ◇ A city in Punjab, Pakistan which became the headquarters of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Jamaat after Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmood Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> migrated from Qadian, India to Pakistan in 1947.
- ◇ Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmood Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>, and numerous companions of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> are buried here.



**Exercise 4.14: Choose the correct location or artifact for the descriptions provided.**

First house of worship built by Hadrat Adam <sup>as</sup> for the worship of One God.	Ka'bah	Qibla	Dome of the Rock
Place where Hadrat Abu Bakr <sup>ra</sup> and the Holy Prophet <sup>sa</sup> hid during their migration.	Cave Thaur	Cave Hira	Cave Hira
A well located inside the Masjid Al Haram.	Mina	Qibla	Zamzam
A special black stone embedded in a corner of the Ka'bah.	Al-Hajar-ul-Aswad	Hijrat Medina	Hoshiarpur
The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> was given the glad tidings of a Promised Son after 40 days of prayers in this city.	Qadian	Hoshiarpur	Rabwah
Location of Minarat-ul-Masih and Masjid Mubarak.	Qadian	Hoshiarpur	Rabwah
Town in Pakistan where the second & third Khalifatul-Masih are laid to rest.	Rabwah	Punjab	Karachi
The farewell address of the Holy Prophet <sup>sa</sup> was given here.	Mount Hira	Mount Arafat	Karbala



## The Sihah Sittah

There are many books of Ahadith, but six of these are considered very reliable and treated as standard works. These are known as Sihah Sittah (The Six Authentic Ones). The hadith is the spoken word of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> and serves as a supporting witness for Sunnah, the practical examples of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. A hadith or sunnah will never contradict the Holy Qur'an.



The Ahadith were narrated by the companions of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> and Muslim narrators. Their compilation started about 100 years after Hijrah and it continued during a period of about 200 years, around 300 years after Hijrah.

Here is a brief introduction to the six most authenticated books of hadith.

### **Saheeh Bukhari**

This book is considered the most authentic book after the Holy Qur'an. Its compiler is Muhammad Isma'il of Bukhara, commonly known as Imam Bukhari. (A.H. 194- 256.; A.D. 816-878)

### **Saheeh Muslim**

Considered second in importance is Saheeh Muslim. This was compiled by Muslim bin Al-Hajjaj who was a native of Neshapur in Khorasan. (A.H. 202-261; A.D. 824-883)

### **Jami` al-Tirmidhi**

Third in order is Jami` Al-Tirmidhi. The compiler, Imam Muhammad bin Eesa was a native of Tirmidh. (A.H. 209-279; A.D. 831-901)

### **Sunan Abu Dawood**

Next is Sunan Abu Dawood, compiled by Sulaiman bin Al-As'ath, known as Abu Dawood. (A.H. 202-275; A.D. 24-897)

### **Sunan Ibn Majah**

Considered fifth in the degree of authenticity is Sunan ibn Majah. It was compiled by Muhammad bin Majah who was from the famous city of Qizwin in Iraq. (A.H. 209-275; A.D. 831-897)



## Sunan Nisa'ee

The sixth book is Sunan Nisa'ee. It was compiled by Ahmad bin Shu'aib, known as 'Nisa'ee' after the city of Nisa in Khorasan. (A.H. 215-306; A.D. 837-928)

### *Mu'atta Imam Malik*

Besides the Sihaah Sittah (The Six Authentic Ones), there is another very important compilation of traditions known as Mu'atta Imam Malik. The compiler, Malik bin Anas, is commonly known as Imam Malik.

### Exercise 4.15: Choose True or False for each statement below.

Hadith is a saying of the Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> .	True	False
Mu'atta Imam Malik is the most authentic book.	True	False
Hadith were compiled 400 years after Hijra.	True	False
When combined, these six authentic books supersede Holy Qur'an.	True	False
Sittah means seven.	True	False
Mu'atta Imam Malik is part of the Sihah Sittah.	True	False
Sunnah are the practical examples of the Holy Prophet <sup>sa</sup> .	True	False

## Khalifatul-Masih

### Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih I Al Hajj Hafiz Hakeem Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>

**Period of Khilafat:** May 27, 1908 - March 13, 1914  
(Six years)

#### Birth and Life Before Khilafat

Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> was born in 1841, at Bhera, Punjab, which is now part of Pakistan. His lineage can be traced back to Hadrat Umar<sup>ra</sup>. His father's name was Ghulam Rasool and mother's name was Noor Bakht. Maulana Hakeem Nooruddin was brilliant and intelligent from his early childhood. Firstly, he had a remarkable memory and, secondly, he was born in a very cultured family, both elements influenced and polished his early education. He learned the Holy Qur'an from his mother, and general education from public schools in Lahore and Rawalpindi.



Maulana Hakeem Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> had a deep desire for higher learning, which prompted him to leave his hometown and family in order to visit some of the cities in India known for learning. In 1865-66, at the age of 25, he traveled to Mecca and Medina to perform Hajj. There he met renowned teachers and saints to acquire religious knowledge. Then he, himself became a learned scholar of Qur'anic studies, language and natural medicine.

#### Important Events

##### Conspiracy to Kill Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>

Due to his extensive knowledge and command of logic, Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> was gaining ground against local Muslim clerics on various issues of religious debates. Those clerics felt desperate and helpless before his logic and frank statements of the facts. Now the only way left to the Muslim clerics was to "remove him."

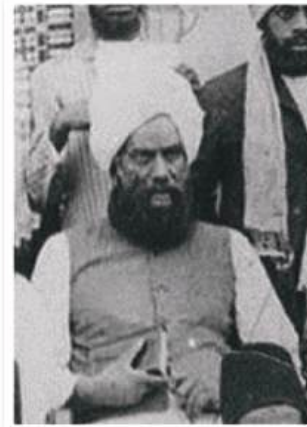
To fulfill their mission, they planned to lure Maulana Hakeem Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> to the main mosque of Bhera, and a fatwa be issued against him and then he be assassinated. Through sheer Divine grace, Maulana Hakeem Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> escaped unhurt. When attempts to murder or assassinate him failed, all local religious scholars joined hands to banish him from the town of Bhera.

## His Profession

On his return from Arabia, he established a school of Qur'anic studies, and started a clinic that offered treatment in natural medicine. His main objective was to serve his countrymen and spread the Qur'anic teachings. At the age of about 40 years, during a journey of one month, he memorized 14 parts of the Holy Qur'an and later became a Hafiz by memorizing the entire Qur'an. God had given him a miraculous healing power and his prayers were abundantly accepted. People from remote corners of India started visiting him for treatment. When the Maharajah of Kashmir heard of his fame, Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> was appointed as his court physician.

## First Person to Pledge Allegiance

Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> first heard of Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> from a person named Sheikh Ruknuddin of District Sargodha. In 1885, he read an announcement published by the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, which impressed him very deeply. Soon after, he went to see Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> in Qadian, who had not yet made any proclamation about himself. But Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>, at the very first sight of him, recognized the truth which he personified and became his most devoted companion. Later, on March 23, 1989, when the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, accepted the first ever Bai`at in Ludhiana, Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> was the first person to take Bai`at.



## Settlement in Qadian

Soon after his first visit to Qadian, he offered to leave his job and settle in Qadian, but the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> did not accept his request at that time. Therefore, he stayed in Kashmir up to September 1892, when the new Ruler of Kashmir terminated his job. He now returned to Bhera and started the construction of a large clinic. In April 1893, the construction of his clinic was near completion. He went to Qadian on a short visit, but when the time came for him to take leave, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> asked him to forget about his hometown and make Qadian his permanent home. He stayed from that moment on and never thought of returning to Bhera. Such was his complete submission and obedience to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

## Life in Qadian

He established a clinic in Qadian and started giving free treatment to the poor. He fully enjoyed the company of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and dedicated

his life to the cause of his mission. He taught the Holy Qur'an and Ahadith to the children of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and to hundreds of other students. He served as a teacher of the Arabic language at the Talim-ul-Islam High School. He was appointed President of the Sadr Anjuman Ahmadiyya, Qadian. He contributed to the newspapers Al-Hakam and Al-Badr and completed the translation of the Holy Qur'an.

### **Election as Khalifa**

At the death of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, leading members of the Jamaat felt Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> should become the khalifa and conveyed it to him in a signed written document. Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> thought for a while and said that he will give his reply after prayer.

After performing nafl, he suggested that Jamaat members gather in a garden where he would address them. In his address, he told the Jamaat that he had never desired to be their leader. He even mentioned the names of seven others that, he said, were more deserving of this honor. He then said that if they insisted, he would accept this responsibility. He reminded them, however, that a person who pledged bai'at gave up all his freedom in the cause of Islam. Finally, he urged Jamaat members to remain united. His address was well received and nearly 1,200 members of the Jamaat pledged allegiance at his hands.

### **Main Achievements**

- On May 30, 1908, Bait-ul-Mal or the Treasury was set up.
- On March 5, 1910, Hudur laid the foundation-stone of Masjid Noor. Noor Hospital was also inaugurated during his khilafat along with many other buildings in Qadian, including housing for the poor.
- On March 1, 1909, Madrasa Ahmadiyya was opened. The purpose of this branch was to produce missionaries according to the instructions of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. The same Madrasa Ahmadiyya was a precursor of Jāmi'a Ahmadiyya.
- English translation of the Holy Qur'an was completed.
- In February 1911, Anjuman Ansarullah was set up which later became the current Majlis Ansarullah.
- On July 25, 1912, Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> laid the foundation stone of Ta'lim-ul-Islam High School.
- On June 19, 1913, the newspaper Al-Fadl was published for the first time.
- In the same month, the first foreign mission was established in England.

- On December 26-28, 1913, he delivered two magnificent lectures in the Jalsa Salana, which turned out to be the last Jalsa Salana of his Khilafat.

**Demise**

In January 1914, he fell seriously ill and continued to decline for next two months. In early March, he wrote out his will while confined to his bed. At his instruction, his will was read out to those who were present. On March 13, 1914, he passed away. At the time of his death he was 73 years old, the same age as that of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> at his passing. He was buried in Behishti Maqbarah (the Heavenly Graveyard), next to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> was truly a selfless, godly person. His most important characteristic was his unshakeable faith in God and his complete reliance on Him for all his needs. He was extremely learned in secular and religious matters. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> had great love for him and expressed it in one of his Persian poems, "How good would it be if every one of the Community would become Nooruddin".

**Exercise 4.16: Answer the questions below.**

**When did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> pass away?**

-----

**How many people accepted bai'at at the hands of the first khalifa of Ahmadiyyat?**

-----

**Where was Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> born?**

-----

**The family of Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> were descendants of whom?**

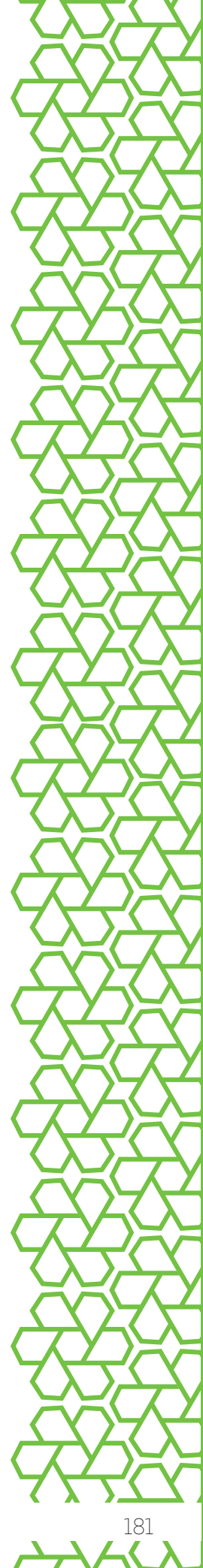
-----

**What was the profession of Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup>?**

-----

**What were the roles fulfilled by Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> in Qadian?**

-----



List at least 3 accomplishments during the life of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup>.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 4.17: Fill in the blanks using information given in the text.**

In 1865-66, at the age of 25, he traveled to \_\_\_\_\_ to perform Hajj.

Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> established a school of \_\_\_\_\_ studies and started a \_\_\_\_\_ that offered treatment in \_\_\_\_\_ medicine.

Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> was the \_\_\_\_\_ person to take \_\_\_\_\_ at the hands of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

He served as a teacher in Arabic in the \_\_\_\_\_ High School.

He was appointed \_\_\_\_\_ of the Sadr Anjuman Ahmadiyya, Qadian.

On March 5, 1910, Hadrat laid the foundation-stone of \_\_\_\_\_.

Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> passed away on \_\_\_\_\_, he was \_\_\_\_\_ years old.



## Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>

**Period of Khilafat:** March 14, 1914 – November 8, 1965 (52 years)

### Birth and Life Before Khilafat

Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> was born in Qadian on January 12, 1889 and was the eldest of the five surviving children of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. He was the Promised son of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, whose birth was foretold by God Almighty, in which Allah gave him the glad tidings of the birth of a pure son within a period of nine years, who would be extremely intelligent and highly learned, and whose fame would spread to the ends of the earth and nations would be blessed through him. That prophecy was published on February 20, 1886, three years before his birth.



### Education

He received his primary education in a school of Qadian and then in the Ta`lim-ul-Islam School. He could not do well in his studies due to his persistent ill-health. His academic career came to an end when he failed in the Matriculation (Grade 10) examination. He learned the translation of the Holy Qur'an and Ahadith from Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>. He began his independent study of religion, history, literature and various other subjects and developed into a great scholar and had mastery over many subjects.

Thus, the following prophecy of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> regarding Musleh Ma'ud was clearly fulfilled in his person.

“He will be extremely intelligent and understanding and will be meek of heart and will be filled with secular and spiritual knowledge.”

He received his first revelation in 1905 when he was only sixteen years old,

“I will place those who follow you above those who disbelieve until the day of Resurrection.”

In 1907, an angel taught him the commentary of Surah Al-Fatihah. From then onward, he was gifted with an unusual knowledge of the commentary of the Holy Qur'an.

When the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> passed away, Hadrat Musleh Ma'ud<sup>ra</sup> was only nineteen years old. On this critical occasion, he stood by the body of his deceased father and made the following pledge, “Even if all the people should



abandon you (the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>), I will stand alone against the whole world, not caring for any opposition or enmity.”

In 1911, at the age of 22, he established Anjuman Ansarullah, a precursor to the current Majlis Ansarullah, under the auspices of Khalifatul-Masih I. This association helped educate the Jamaat and cater to the upbringing of the Jamaat’s youth.

In 1912, Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> performed Hajj. In 1913, he started the publication of a weekly paper called Al Fadh, which eventually became a daily newspaper of the Jamaat.



### **Election as Khalifa**

The day after the death of Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup>, his will was read out to some 2,000 Ahmadi Muslims who had gathered in the mosque. In his will, Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> suggested the Jamaat elect a new Khalifa. Maulana Syed Muhammad Ahsan<sup>ra</sup> then stood up and formally proposed the name of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>. After this, the entire congregation shouted, “We second it.” Shortly afterwards, all present took bai’at at the hand of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>.

On March 14, 1914, the day after the death of Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup>, Hadrat Mirza Bashiruddin<sup>ra</sup> was elected as Khalifatul-Masih II, when he was only 25 years old. About 2,000 Ahmadi Muslims present at that occasion, took Bai’at at his hands. There was a small but influential group of opponents within the community, who did not take the Bai’at. At first, they tried their best to put an end to the system of Khilafat. Then, they decided to leave Qadian and moved to Lahore. They were certain that the young khalifa would not survive without their support, and the system of Khilafat would collapse by itself. Their expectations, however, turned out to be completely wrong. The followers of the young Khalifatul-Masih grew rapidly, whereas his opponents were reduced to an insignificant group. The blessings of Khilafat prevailed!

Maulana Muhammad Ali and others who did not take the bai’at of the second Khalifa, later founded the Ahmadiyya Anjuman Isha’at Islam. They would later come to be known as Ghair Muba’een (also known as Lahori Ahmadi Muslims) and differ with the Ahmadiyya Muslim Jamaat on two important points:

1. Ghair Muba’een regard the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> as only a reformer - not a prophet.
2. Consequently, they argue that the successors of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> should not be called khulafa.

## Main Achievements

The 52-year Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> blessed the Jamaat in countless ways. Some highlights of his achievements are as follows:

- The first Majlis-e-Shura (Consultative Body) Session of his Khilafat took place in 1914 to formulate a worldwide Tabligh plan. In 1922 Majlis Shoora was established for the first time, as a permanent advisory body to the Khalifa.
- In December 1915, the commentary of first part of the Holy Qur'an was published.
- On January 1, 1919, various departments (Nizarats) were set up to streamline the operations of Sadr Anjuman Ahmadiyya.
- On September 23, 1924, he attended the Wembley Conference in England, where his article 'Ahmadiyyat - The True Islam' was read out.
- Jāmi'a Ahmadiyya, an elite institution for training and producing qualified Muslim missionaries, was inaugurated in 1928.
- In December 1930, his elder brother, Hadrat Mirza Sultan Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> took Bai'at at his hands and became the fourth Ahmadi son of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. Thus, the part of the prophecy regarding Musleh Ma'ud, "He will convert three into four was fulfilled".
- He wrote a large number of books, including ten volumes of the Tafseer-e-Kabeer, the detailed commentary of the Holy Qur'an.
- Many new Ahmadiyya missions were opened in many foreign countries. The Fadl Mosque was founded on October 19, 1924.
- The rapidly growing community was divided into different age groups to ensure better training of all Jamaat members. These auxiliaries are:
  1. Lajna Ima'illah
  2. Nasirat-ul-Ahmadiyya
  3. Majlis Ansarullah
  4. Khuddam-ul-Ahmadiyya
  5. Atfal-ul-Ahmadiyya
- A magazine, Misbah, was introduced in 1926 solely for Lajna.
- In 1928, Nusrat Girls High School was established.
- On July 25, 1931, he was elected president of the All-India Kashmir Committee, and strived hard for the rights of the Kashmiri people. Later, in June 1948, he sent a battalion of Ahmadi volunteers called Furqan Force to fight along with the Pakistan Army for liberating Kashmir.

- Tahrik-i-Jadid was initiated in 1934 to further promote the missionary work in foreign countries. Because of this scheme, various foreign missions were opened, and mosques were built.
- In January 1944, he claimed for the first time that he was the Promised Son, mentioned in the prophecy regarding Musleh Ma'ud. The claim was based on divine revelations and dreams.
- In August 1947, when Pakistan came into being, Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup> along with the Jamaat members moved from Qadian to Pakistan. Some 313 Ahmadi, called Darveshan stayed behind to take care of Qadian. In Pakistan, Hudur<sup>ra</sup> laid the foundation of the Jamaat's new center in Rabwah, a waste and barren piece of land, which has wonderfully transformed into a model town with all its religious, educational and social institutions. In addition, Rabwah is the headquarters of the worldwide Ahmadiyya Muslim Jamaat, and the official residence of the Khalifatul-Masih, called Qasr-e-Khilafat. It would be of interest to note that the Arabic word Rabwah means 'an elevated land' and is mentioned in the Holy Qur'an (23:51) with reference to Jesus Christ and his mother.
- In 1951, Jāmi'a Nusrat (Women's College) was established in Rabwah.
- In 1957 Waqf-e-Jadid was initiated to expand missionary work to educate and impart religious training to rural population inside Pakistan.
- Tafseer-e-Sagheer, the short commentary of the Holy Qur'an was completed in 1957.

### **Murderous Attempt on His Life**

On March 10, 1954, Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup> survived an attempt on his life, but he was seriously wounded. This happened in Masjid Mubarak, Rabwah, at the time of Asr prayer. As soon as he got up to leave after the Prayer, an enemy of Ahmadiyyat, who had come to the mosque with an intention to kill him, moved forward and stabbed him in the side of his neck from behind. It was a deep wound, but God saved the life of Hudur.

### **Demise**

As a result of his extremely heavy work load and the after-effects of the deep wound in his neck, his health condition gradually worsened over a period of seven years. At last, on November 8, 1965, at nearly 2 a.m. Hadrat Musleh Ma'ud, Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup>, passed away, at the age of seventy-seven. He was buried in the Behishtī Maqbarah by the side of his mother, Hadrat Ummul-Mu'mineen, Sayyidah Nusrat Jahan Begum<sup>ra</sup>.

He possessed a unique combination of qualities of leadership, organizational genius, trust in God, courage, depth of knowledge in many fields. No doubt, his 52-year long Khilafat represented a golden period in the history of Ahmadiyyat.

**Exercise 4.18: Answer the questions below.**

**Who was the father of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>?**

-----

**How old was he when he became the second Khalifa?**

**Why is he called the “Promised Son”?**

-----

**What were some of the qualities that were foretold in the prophecy about him?**

-----

**In 1934, he established the scheme of:**

**What was the main idea behind Tahrik-i-Jadid?**

-----

**What was the reason for the establishment of a new center in Rabwah?**

-----

**When was Waqf-e-Jadid established? And what was the purpose of this scheme?**

-----

**What are some of the accomplishments during the life of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II?**

-----

-----

**For how many years was Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> the khalifa of the Jamaat?**

-----

## Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih III Hafiz Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>

**Period of Khilafat:** Nov. 9, 1965 – June 9, 1982 (17 years)

### Birth and Life Before Khilafat

Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was born on November 16, 1909. He was the son of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>th</sup> and grandson of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> became a Hafiz at the age of thirteen, when he completed the memorization of the Holy Qur'an.



In July 1929, he obtained the degree of Maulana Fadil (Religious Scholar), from Punjab University. In 1934, he graduated from Government College, Lahore. He married in August 1934. One month later, he left Qadian for England for higher studies. In November 1938, he came back to Qadian after obtaining his master's degree from Oxford University.

Soon after his return from higher studies, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> started serving, first as a professor and then, from 1939 to 1944, as principal, of Jāmi'a Ahmadiyya Qadian. From May 1944 to November 1965 (until he became Khalifa), he served as principal, Talim-ul-Islam College, Rabwah, Pakistan.

He also served as Sadr Majlis Khuddam-ul-Ahmadiyya from 1939 to 1949. From the year 1949, when, Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup> himself took hold of Majlis Khuddam-ul-Ahmadiyya as its president, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> acted as Nai'b Sadr up to November 1954. The same year, he was appointed Sadr Majlis Ansarullah. From June 1948 to June 1950, he played an important role in the Furqan Force Battalion, an Ahmadi volunteer force, put at the disposal of the Government of Pakistan, for the cause of Muslim Kashmir. In May 1955, he was appointed Sadr of Sadr Anjuman Ahmadiyya (main administrative body of the Jamaat), by Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup>.

### Election as Khalifa

On November 8, 1965, after the demise of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II, the electoral college met in Mubarak Mosque, Rabwah. When the votes were cast, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was elected by an overwhelming majority. 5,000 Ahmadi Muslims were waiting outside the mosque performed bai'at at his hand. He was 56 years old at the time.

### Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih's First Address after Bai`at

"This is a covenant, which I have made knowing that God is One and is



Omnipotent and Omnipresent and He knows the unseen and cursed is he who behaves fraudulently at this hour. I promise before you all that I shall try my best to convey the divine message of Islam in the whole world and treat every one of you with love and sympathy. As you have put a heavy burden of responsibility on my shoulders, I expect that you will assist me with prayers and sincere advice that Allah may take such work from me, which is essential for the propagation of Islam and Ahmadiyyat.” (Ahmadiyya Gazette Canada, May-June 2003, page 22)

### Main Achievements

- In 1965, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>rh</sup> established the Fadl-i-Umar Foundation in memory of his father, who was named Fadl-i-Umar in a revelation of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. The purpose of this foundation was to carry on all the works in which the departed khalifa had taken particular interest. An appeal was made to the Jamaat to raise Rs. 2.5 million for the foundation. Actual contributions far exceeded the initial target, which was then raised to Rs. 5.2 million. The main objectives of the foundation are to assist in:
  - ◇ Research work
  - ◇ New missionary venture
  - ◇ New educational effort
  - ◇ Economic welfare
- On October 3, 1971, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>rh</sup> inaugurated the Khilafat Library in Rabwah. This library can accommodate 50,000 books and has ample space for readers, research scholars and administrative work.
- In 1973, at Jalsa Salana Rabwah, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>rh</sup> announced that the Jamaat would celebrate its 100th anniversary on March 23, 1989. The celebrations would start on March 23 and continue throughout the year, finishing at the 1989 Jalsa Salana. Under this scheme, Hudur<sup>ra</sup> appealed to raise a fund of 2.5 million rupees in sixteen years (1974-1989)
- The main objectives of the Centenary Jubilee Scheme were:
  - ◇ To bring the message of Islam to the ends of the earth
  - ◇ To establish additional Jamaat Mission houses
  - ◇ To publish Islamic literature in 100 languages
  - ◇ To install a modern printing press in Pakistan





- ◇ To establish a radio station in an African country
- ◇ To translate the Holy Qur'an into 6 languages
- After touring West Africa in 1970, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> announced a scheme to expand Jamaat activities in West Africa through the establishment of schools and hospitals. The new scheme was named Nusrat Jehan Scheme. He also appealed to Ahmadi Muslim teachers and doctors to volunteer themselves for service in these African countries.



- Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih III<sup>ra</sup> announced the scheme Waqf-e `Ardi on March 12, 1966, under which Ahmadi Muslims should spend at least two weeks of their time at a designated place, at their own expense, in teaching the Holy Qur'an and giving religious training to the local Ahmadis.
- He instituted Majlis Moosiyan / Moosiyat on August 5, 1966.
- He inaugurated Khilafat Library, Rabwah on October 3, 1971, and Masjid Aqsa, Rabwah, on March 31, 1972.
- The foundation stone of Masjid Basharat, Spain was laid, on October 9, 1980. On this occasion, he announced the golden Islamic motto – **Love for All, Hatred for None.**



### Conference in London

The Jamaat organized, "The Deliverance from the Cross" conference in London, from June 2nd to June 4th, 1978. Well-known scholars of the world's major faiths read their scholarly papers at this event.

In his address, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> refuted the Christian belief that Jesus Christ was a God and alive in the heavens. He reaffirmed the oneness of Almighty Allah and beautifully expounded the high status of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. Thousands of Europeans listened to Hadrat's address and marveled at the depth and breadth of his knowledge. Media from around the world covered the event.

## Persecution of Ahmadi Muslims in Pakistan

Ahmadi Muslims have faced persecution, like the Muslims of the early days of Islam. On May 29, 1974, with the attack on Rabwah railway station by the Nishtar College students, severe violence broke out against Ahmadis throughout Pakistan. It was backed by the then government of Pakistan headed by prime minister Zulfikar Ali Bhutto.

Houses of Ahmadis were looted and burnt, and a number of Ahmadis were killed during these acts of violence. The community members were subjected to social boycott and many high-ranking Ahmadi civil and army officials were forcibly retired. During this critical period, the Ahmadis, under the guidance of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih III<sup>ra</sup>, faced all hardships with great patience, endurance and prayers.

## Debate in Pakistan National Assembly

These activities culminated in a resolution presented in the National Assembly of Pakistan on June 30, 1974. A debate was held in which the Jamaat was also allowed to present its position. The Jamaat's position, compiled in what is known as the Mahzarnama (the Memorandum) was distributed to National Assembly members. Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> personally answered allegations levied against the Jamaat. Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was accompanied by a four-member delegation, consisting of:

1. Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>
2. Hadrat Maulana Abul Ata Jallandhari
3. Sheikh Muhammad Ahmad Mazhar
4. Maulana Dost Muhammad Shahid

On Sep 7, 1974, The National Assembly of Pakistan passed an amendment to the Constitution, which declared the Ahmadis in Pakistan to be non-Muslims. Prime Minister Zulfikar Ali Bhutto, who used to take great pride for declaring Ahmadi Muslims as non-Muslims, met a horrific end on July 5, 1977. He was removed from office by General Zia-ul Haq and then hanged on April 4, 1979. Bhutto's age at the time was 51 years and 3 months. This incident marked the fulfillment of an 1891 revelation to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, Kalbun Yamootu 'Alaa Kalbin, which translates as, 'A dog dies upon a dog'. In Tadhkirah, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> explains, "With regard to the death of a certain person, God the Almighty revealed to me through the value of the letters of the alphabet. He is a dog and he will die according to the value of the letters in the word kalb [dog], which amounts to fifty-two. This means that his age will not exceed fifty-two years and that he will die within the course of his fifty second year."

**Promised Messiah's<sup>as</sup> Prophecy Fulfilled**

A famous revelation of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> is:

“Kings will seek blessings from your garments.”

This prophecy was first fulfilled during the time of the Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> in the person of Sir Singhate who was elected Governor General of Gambia, West Africa. Mr. Singhate, a devout Muslim, had previously been president of all the Ahmadiyya branches in Gambia.

When he was elected to this prestigious office, he earnestly prayed for some time. Then he informed Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> that he wanted to obtain blessings from the garments of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. Accordingly, a piece of the clothing was sent to him from Rabwah.

**Demise**

In June 1982, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> fell ill while visiting Islamabad. His condition worsened and, on June 9, 1982 at 12:45 P.M, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> passed away. His was buried in Behishtī Maqbarah Rabwah, Pakistan.

**Exercise 4.19: Answer the questions below.**

**What was the purpose of the Fadl-i-Umar Foundation?**

-----  
-----  
-----  
-----

**What were the main objectives of the Centenary Jubilee Scheme?**

-----  
-----  
-----

**When were Ahmadi Muslims declared non-Muslims?**

-----

-----  
-----  
**What was the name of the Prime Minister of Pakistan, and how did he die?**

-----  
-----  
**Which prophecy of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was fulfilled during the Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>rh</sup>?**

-----  
**How long was the Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>rh</sup>?**

## Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih IV Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>

**Period of Khilafat:** June 10, 1982 – April 21, 2003 (21 years)

### Birth and life before Khilafat

Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was born on December 18, 1928 in Qadian, India. He was a son of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> and the grandson of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

He obtained his high school education in 1944 at Ta'lim-ul-Islam High School, Qadian and then his higher secondary education from Government College Lahore. He obtained the degree Shahid (Religious Scholar) from Jāmi'a Ahmadiyya, Rabwah. He obtained some higher education in the School of Oriental Studies, London University.



He served as Nazim Irshad of Waqf-e-Jadid and made great efforts to promote the missionary work inside Pakistan. He also served as Sadr Majlis Khuddam-ul -Ahmadiyya (1966-1969) and as a Director of Fadl-i-Umar foundation and later as Sadr Majlis Ansarullah (1979-1982). In July and August 1974, he was a member of the Jamaat's delegation, headed by Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih III<sup>ra</sup>, to the National Assembly of Pakistan, to present and prove the truth of Jamaat's belief.

### Election as Khalifa

Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> passed away on June 9, 1982, and on June 10, 1982, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was elected as Khalifatul-Masih IV.

### Anti-Ahmadi Muslim Ordinance

Despite two major outbreaks of violence against the Ahmadis in Pakistan (1953 and 1974), the divinely instituted Ahmadiyya movement continued its systematic progress during the periods of second and third Khilafat. In the face of grand new schemes launched by Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih IV<sup>th</sup>, the government of Pakistan and its orthodox Islamic clergy mounted another wave of violence, persecution and severe restrictions against the Ahmadis, which culminated in Ordinance 20 on April 26, 1984.

Under this ordinance, Ahmadi Muslims were not allowed to recite the Holy Qur'an, Salat, Kalimah or even say As-Salamu 'Alaikum to anyone. Violating Ordinance 20 triggered the imposition of fines, imprisonment and death. Thousands of Ahmadi Muslims were jailed. Ahmadi Muslims who are jailed



for their faith are known as Aseeran-e-Rah-e-Maula (Detainees in the cause of God). It became increasingly difficult to safeguard the institution of Khilafat in Pakistan in view of the new restrictions.

After monitoring the situation, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> summoned his most senior counselors to a meeting. Recalling the meeting, the khalifa said,

“I was never in any way scared of General Zia. I had criticized him very openly in my sermons. I had told him, ‘Mend your ways and your attitude. Cease this persecution or you will face the Wrath of God.’ But with this ordinance, it was a different kind of situation. It was not my safety that was at stake, but my ability to speak out. With this law, Zia could silence me as the effective head of the Community. I could remain in Pakistan and speak out and then be put into prison.” The advice of his counsellors was unanimous – he should leave Pakistan immediately. The khalifa accepted the advice of his counsellors, that he should leave Pakistan.

### **Migration to England**

At that time, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was living in Rabwah. General Zia-ul-Haq ordered his agencies to never allow Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> to leave the country. Several security agencies were assigned to this task.

The preparations for Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>'s escape from Pakistan were put into the hands of a retired senior army officer. It was decided that Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> would leave Pakistan by KLM (a Dutch airline). A person was sent to Karachi to make reservations, because a phone reservation was impossible due to the phones being tapped.

There were two flights leaving from Karachi to Europe that week. One was very early in the morning on Monday April 30<sup>th</sup>, and the other on Wednesday May 2<sup>nd</sup>. Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> expressed the wish to take the Wednesday flight since that would give him enough time to prepare for his departure. However, the KLM manager advised him to take the earlier flight on early Monday morning. The Monday flight went straight to Amsterdam while the Wednesday flight had a stop in Gulf state. There was a chance that Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> might get arrested in the Gulf state on Pakistan's request.

Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> made it clear that he would not disguise himself or use a false passport. Early in the morning, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>'s car, along with the normal escort, was seen leaving Rabwah. Intelligence agencies presumed that Hadrat





Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was on his way to Islamabad. But Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> was not present in this car. His third oldest brother, Mirza Munawar Ahmad, was travelling in that car to Islamabad. Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> had already left Rabwah at 2 a.m. for Karachi.

At the airport, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> waited in the private lounge and went through passport control. The airport authorities delayed his flight to determine if Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> could leave. General Zia ul Haq had sent a letter to all seaports and airports stating that “Mirza Nasir Ahmad” – instead of “Mirza Tahir Ahmad” - not be allowed to leave Pakistan. This caused a lot of confusion amongst airport officials. The security officials tried to get a hold of authorities in Islamabad to clarify the matter but it was very late at night and no one was answering the phones.

An hour after the scheduled departure, the flight was announced and Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> boarded the plane for the flight to Amsterdam. He eventually reached London on April 30th, 1984.

In London, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> set up the Jamaat’s administrative offices. He later launched several landmark initiatives to expand the Jamaat on an unprecedented level.

### **Fate of Pakistan’s President – General Zia ul Haq**

General Zia ul Haq continued to persecute Ahmadi Muslims in Pakistan. Consequently, during the June 10th 1988 Friday sermon, Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih IV<sup>th</sup> challenged President Zia-ul-Haq of Pakistan and his supporters to a Mubahala (prayer contest). This meant that by offering prayers for God’s judgment, God would inflict His sign of wrath on the liars. Hudur also said that God would do so even if the mubahala was not formally accepted by General Zia-ul-Haq. Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> prayed,

“Whichever of us in Thy sight are liars and fabricators, let Thy Wrath descend upon them within one year. May Thou inflict such disgrace, torment and punishment upon them that all people can witness their debasement and utter destruction ... O Almighty God, do this so that Right may be distinguished from Wrong and the difference between Truth and Falsehood become Manifest.” (“A Man of God”)

But General Zia-ul-Haq paid no attention to Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>’s words. During the August 12, 1988 Friday Sermon, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> declared that since General Zia-ul-Haq had not changed



his ways, God will punish him. On August 17th, 1988, General Zia-ul-Haq's plane blew up in the sky and everyone on board died.

### Main Achievements

- The first project Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> launched was the construction of suitable houses for the needy people of Rabwah. A neighborhood of Rabwah is now called Buyut-ul-Hamd Colony where spacious, comfortable houses have been built for 87 families.
- In 1982, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> travelled to Europe to inaugurate the first Ahmadi Muslim mosque, built in Pedroabad, Spain. The foundation stone of this mosque was laid by the Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad. On September 10, 1982, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> inaugurated the mosque, which was built nearly 500 years after the last mosque was built in Spain.
- On October 10, 1982, Hudur<sup>th</sup> announced a short time waqf scheme for Spain and to learn the Spanish language.
- On January 28, 1983, Hudur<sup>th</sup> launched a very important scheme Da'wat Ilallah, meaning "Calling to the path of Allah." Under this grand scheme, every Ahmadi should start preaching to his friends and to all those with whom he has some acquaintance. In his various sermons, he explained very effective ways of successful preaching. This scheme has been progressing very well since it was launched.
- On December 12, 1985, the scheme of 'Waqf-e-Jadid' was extended to all the countries of the world.
- On April 3rd, 1987, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> introduced Waqf-e-Nau scheme, to urge Jamaat members to dedicate their children for the cause of Islam before their birth.
- The Centenary Celebrations in 1989 were held in all parts of the world to mark the completion of first century of Ahmadiyyat.
- In 1991 Hudur<sup>th</sup> went to Qadian to attend the 100th Jalsa Salana. It was a historic event, as after 1947 it was the first visit of any khalifa to Qadian.
- In order to spread the message of Islam all over the world, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> launched the first ever Muslim television called Muslim Television Ahmadiyya (MTA) on August 21st, 1992 in London.
- On October 16, 1992, Hudur<sup>th</sup> inaugurated the Bait-ul-Islam Mosque (Toronto, Canada), the largest mosque in North America, with the Friday Sermon. It was an unprecedented event – for the first time in the history of Ahmadiyyat and Islam, a Friday sermon was transmitted live to the world, thus fulfilling the revelation of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, "I shall cause thy message to reach the corners of the



earth” – in an entirely new way.

- The first international bai'at (pledge of allegiance) took place in 1993.
- The weekly newspaper Al-Fadl International began publication from London on January 7th, 1994. It is printed at the Raqem Press. The press is equipped with modern printing equipment and is owned by the Jamaat. The newspaper is also available on the Internet.
- Humanity First was established in 1994. The main purpose of this organization is to relieve suffering caused by natural disasters or man-made conflicts, to promote peace and understanding based upon mutual tolerance and respect.
- On October 14, 1994 Hudur<sup>th</sup> simultaneously, inaugurated Bait-ur-Rahman Mosque in Washington D.C. and the Jamaat's first satellite earth station. This station serves the western hemisphere by relaying the international transmission from the UK. On April 1, 1996, 24-hour worldwide MTA service was started.
- On October 19, 1999, Hudur<sup>th</sup> laid the foundation stone of the Bait-ul-Futuh Mosque in Morden, Surrey, UK, which was to be the largest Mosque of Western Europe.
- On February 21, 2003, Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> launched the Maryam Shadi Fund to give financial help to girls in poor families for their marriage.



After his migration to United Kingdom in 1984, an addition of 13,065 new mosques and 985 new missions took place in various countries of the world. The up-to-date translations of the Holy Qur'an increased to 56 and the translations of selections from the Holy Qur'an increased to more than 100. Since 1984, Jamaat Ahmadiyya was established in 84 additional countries of the world and overall, Jamaat Ahmadiyya was established in 175 countries of the world.

### **Demise**

Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> delivered his last Friday Sermon at the London Mosque on April 18th, 2003 and attended a Majlis Irfan (Question & Answer session) that evening. The next morning, at approximately 9:30 AM, April 19th, 2003, he passed away in his residence, at the age of 75. He was buried in Tilford, United Kingdom.

**Exercise 4.20: Circle True or False for the statements below.**

Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad <sup>th</sup> was the grandson of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad <sup>ra</sup> .	True	False
He obtained the degree Shahid (Religious Scholar) from Punjab University.	True	False
He was born in Qadian.	True	False
The first international bai'at (pledge of allegiance) took place in 1993.	True	False
The Waqf-e-Nau scheme was started by Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad.	True	False
MTA stands for a 24-hour television station run by the Jamaat.	True	False
"Da'wat Ilallah" means calling people to Allah.	True	False

**Exercise 4.21: Complete the following short answer questions.**

**Why did Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> leave Pakistan?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

**What is a mubahala?**

-----

-----

-----

**What happened because of the mubahala?**

-----

-----

**What mistake did General Zia-ul-Haq make in his letter?**

**Due to Ordinance 20 what difficulties were faced by Ahmadi Muslims in Pakistan?**

**How was the following prophecy fulfilled, "I shall cause thy message to reach the corners of the earth"?**



## Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih V Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup>

**Period of Khilafat:** April 22, 2003 to Present

### Birth and Life Before Khilafat

Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad was born on September 15, 1950, in Rabwah, Pakistan. He is the son of Sahibzada Mirza Mansoor Ahmad and Sahibzadi Nasira Begum Sahiba, a daughter of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup>. Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> is also the great grandson of Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and a grandson of Hadrat Mirza Sharif Ahmad Sahib<sup>ra</sup>, the youngest son of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.



Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> received his primary education at Ta'lim-ul-Islam High School Rabwah, and obtained his B.A. from Ta'leem-ul-Islam College Rabwah, Pakistan. In 1976, he earned his Master of Science degree in agricultural economics from the Agriculture University Faisalabad, Pakistan.

In 1977, he devoted his life (Waqf-e-Zindagi) for Islam and went to Ghana under the Nusrat-Jahan Scheme, which supports a large number of hospitals and schools in West Africa. He became the founding principal of the Ahmadiyya Secondary School in Salaga, where he served for two years. Next, he served for four years as principal of the Ahmadiyya Secondary School at Essarkyir. He served for a further two years as Manager of the Ahmadiyya Agricultural Farm in Depali.

Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> returned to Pakistan in 1985 and served in various senior administrative posts within the Jamaat during the next 18 years, including local Amir and as Nazir-e-Ala (Chief Executive of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community) in Pakistan from 1997 until his election as khalifa.

In 1999, Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> had the honor of becoming a 'prisoner in the name of Allah' in Rabwah, Pakistan. He was arrested on the false charges of 'Blasphemy' and 'Disturbance of Public Order', as part of the growing wave of persecution of Ahmadi Muslims in Pakistan. He was imprisoned on 30th April 1999 and freed on 10th May of the same year.

### Election as Khalifa

Following the demise of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih IV on April 19, 2003, the Majlis Intikhab-e Khilafat (the electoral college) met at Fadl Mosque, London, UK, on April 22, 2003, whereupon Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> was elected



as Khalifatul-Masih V (Fifth Successor to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>). It was the first time in the history of the Jamaat that the election of a khalifa was held outside of the Indo-Pakistan sub-continent and Ahmadi Muslims from around the world, as well as others, could follow the proceedings surrounding the election live on MTA International. After the election, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> delivered his first address requesting the Jamaat to focus on prayers. Then, the members of the electoral college as well as thousands of other Ahmadi Muslims waiting outside the Fadl Mosque, had the privilege of taking the Pledge of Initiation (Bai`at) at the blessed hand of Hadrat Amirul-Mu'mineen, Khalifatul-Masih V<sup>aba</sup>.

### Main Achievements

- From 1994 to 1997, Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> served as Chairman of the Nasir Foundation and President of the Rabwah Beautification Committee. He expanded the Gulshan-e-Ahmad Nursery and his personal efforts helped transform Rabwah into the lush green city that it has become.
- In September 2003, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> announced the establishment of the Tahir Foundation.
- In September 2003 Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> ordered the compilation and publication of all Friday Sermons, Majalis Irfan (Question Answer sessions in Urdu language) and other Question-Answer sessions, as well as the considerable collection of other works of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih IV<sup>rh</sup>.
- On October 3, 2003, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> delivered his Friday Sermon inaugurating the Baitul-Futuh Mosque, Morden, Surrey, London, the largest mosque of the Western Europe.
- On November 6, 2004, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> announced the start of Office V of Tahrik-i-Jadid.
- In 2004, Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> launched the annual National Peace Symposium in which guests from all walks of life come together to exchange ideas on the promotion of peace and harmony. Each year the symposium attracts many politicians, religious leaders and other dignitaries.
- On October 1, 2005, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> inaugurated the first Jāmi'a Ahmadiyya of Europe in London.
- On May 27, 2008, the Centenary of Ahmadiyya Khilafat was marked by grand events world-wide to express thankfulness to Allah for the completion of 100 years of Khilafat. This historic event was shown live



world-wide through MTA from London, England. In his address, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> took a historic pledge from the members of Jamaat world-wide, affirming to spread Islam and Ahmadiyyat to the corners of the earth, to safeguard the institution of Khilafat, and to ensure that the upcoming generations continue to remain attached to Khilafat.

- In 2009, Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> also launched the annual 'Ahmadiyya Muslim Prize for the Advancement of Peace'; an international peace award for individuals or organizations that have demonstrated an extraordinary commitment and service to the cause of peace and humanitarianism.

Since the start of his Khilafat, Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad, Khalifatul-Masih V<sup>aba</sup> has travelled to various countries of Europe, Africa, North America and Asia. In these countries, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> met with thousands of Jamaat members, missionaries and office bearers. He also met with the leaders of those countries and numerous dignitaries from various sectors, who welcomed Hudur<sup>aba</sup> and commended the services of the Jamaat in the fields of agriculture, education and healthcare.

Under the leadership of Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup>, the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community has built many schools and hospitals that provide high class facilities in remote parts of the world.

### Peace Initiatives

Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> is the world's leading Muslim figure promoting peace and inter-religious harmony. Through his sermons, lectures, books, and personal meetings, His Holiness has continually advocated the worship of God Almighty and serving humanity. He also continually advocates for the establishment of universal human rights, a just society and a separation of religion and state.



### Response to Persecution

Despite the continued sectarian persecution that Ahmadi Muslims are subjected to in various Muslim majority nations, Hudur<sup>aba</sup> expressly forbid any violence. On 28 May 2010, anti-Ahmadiyya terrorists attacked two mosques belonging to the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community in Lahore, Pakistan. 86 Ahmadi Muslims were martyred during their Friday Prayers, whilst scores

more were injured. Despite the barbaric nature of this pre-meditated crime against humanity, His Holiness instructed Ahmadi Muslims worldwide to respond only through prayers and entirely peaceful means.

**Exercise 4.22: Complete the following short answer questions.**

**When and where was Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> born?**

-----

**Where did he receive his primary education?**

-----

**Which country did he go to after devoting his life for the service of Islam?**

-----

**What was his biggest achievement in Ghana?**

-----

-----

**What was the reason for his arrest in 1999?**

-----

-----

-----

**When was he elected as a Khalifa?**

-----

**How did Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> respond to the persecution of Ahmadi Muslims?**

-----

-----

-----

**What can we do to promote peace in the world?**

-----

-----

-----

-----

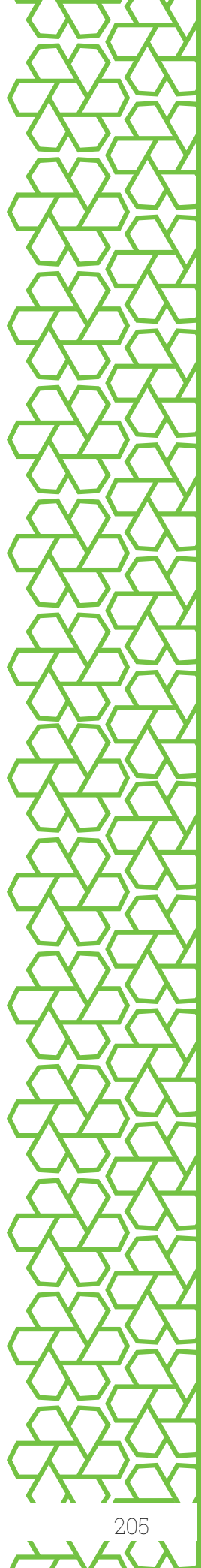
**Exercise 4.23: Review of Khulafa-e-Ahmadiyyat.**

**Write the names of the Khalifatul-Masih in chronological order.**

1. -----
2. -----
3. -----
4. -----
5. -----

**Exercise 4.24: On a separate sheet of paper, write down one major achievement from the period of each khalifa.**

**Exercise 4.25: Assign each student in class a scheme to research and present to the rest of the class.**





The background of the image is a repeating pattern of interlocking hexagons, creating a honeycomb-like texture. The hexagons are light gray and set against a white background.

# **Enrichment Material**



## Attributes of Allah

<b>Al-Jaleel</b> الْجَلِيلُ	The Lord of Majesty	Allah is Awe-Inspiring. He is all things Supreme and Majestic.
<b>Al-Kareem</b> الْكَرِيمُ	The Noble	Allah is kind, unselfish and His Generous essence is valued and honored by those who rely on Him for their existence. He gives before we are deserving of His generous nobility.
<b>Ar-Raqeeb</b> الرَّقِيبُ	The Watchful	Allah is attentive and vigilant to all His creation. He notices everything and nothing can escape His protective regard.
<b>Al-Mujeeb</b> الْمُجِيبُ	The Answerer of Prayers	Allah does not just hear us, but He answers and responds to us. He is ever ready to acknowledge and grant us His blessings when we call on Him.
<b>Al-Waasi'</b> الْوَاسِعُ	The Bountiful	Allah's existence is boundless, and everything is in His embrace. His essence is inexhaustible and there are no limits to His Bounty.
<b>Al-Hakeem</b> الْحَكِيمُ	The Wise	Allah possesses perfect Wisdom and is free from error or misjudgment. His Wisdom is evident in the perfection of His creation, none of which has been created in vain.

<b>Al-Wadood</b> الْوَدُودُ	The Loving	Allah is full of love for His obedient servants and no one deserves our love more than He. He is the source of all love and kindness that is observed in our world.
<b>Al-Majeed</b> الْمَجِيدُ	The Glorious	Allah is all glory and majesty. All nobility, honor, and admiration belong to Him.
<b>Al-Baa'ith</b> الْبَاعِثُ	The Raiser (of the dead)	Allah has the power to raise the dead again. He will raise all souls on the Day of Judgment. He can rouse us from both sleep and death.
<b>Ash-Shaheed</b> الشَّهِيدُ	The Witness, The Observer	Allah is ever-present and He observes everything in creation. Nothing can be hidden from Him and so He witnesses the seen and the unseen.
<b>Al-Haqq</b> الْحَقُّ	The Truth, The True	Allah is the One who sends forth all truth and all reality. He is the One who truly exists because all else is finite, while He is infinite.
<b>Al-Wakeel</b> الْوَكِيلُ	The Guardian	Allah is the Caretaker and Guardian of all things. We entrust all of our affairs to Allah because He is the One in ultimate control.
<b>Al-Qawiyy</b> الْقَوِيُّ	The Powerful	Allah has the power to move mountains and oceans. His power prevails over all creation and is inexhaustible.
<b>Al-Mateen</b> الْمَتِينُ	The Strong	Allah's strength is enduring. It does not experience hardship or weariness. His Strength gives His believers absolute certainty in His existence.

<p><b>Al-Waliyy</b> الْوَالِيُّ</p>	<p>The Best Friend, The Protector</p>	<p>Allah is loving towards His creation and part of His love is to guide and protect them. He is an ally to those who befriend Him.</p>
<p><b>Al-Hameed</b> الْحَمِيدُ</p>	<p>The Praiseworthy</p>	<p>Allah is worthy of all our reverence for all His actions, statements, attributes, and decree. His praise is due in all circumstances.</p>
<p><b>Al-Muhsee</b> الْمُحْصِيُّ</p>	<p>He Who Keeps Count</p>	<p>Allah is the One who enumerates all actions and thoughts and words. He can testify to all things, seen and unseen, small or large because He can account for everything.</p>
<p><b>Al-Mubdi'</b> الْمُبْدِيُّ</p>	<p>The Originator (of life), The Beginner</p>	<p>Allah began all creation and He alone can bestow life. He created everything out of nothing, so He is the Originator of all.</p>
<p><b>Al-Mu'eed</b> الْمُعِيدُ</p>	<p>The Repeater of Life</p>	<p>Allah has the power to raise us up again when our life in this world has ended. Just like when it seems a tree will never be green again during winter, He gives us another life.</p>
<p><b>Al-Muhyee</b> الْمُحْيِي</p>	<p>The Giver of Life</p>	<p>Everything we know to be alive is alive only because Allah has given it life. Nothing can live without His Blessing of Life.</p>
<p><b>Al-Mumeet</b> الْمُمِيتُ</p>	<p>The Taker of Life (The Controller of the Cause of Death)</p>	<p>Just like Allah is the only one who can grant life, so He is also the only one who can take life away. Everything that has been given life by Him, will die when He wills.</p>

<p><b>Al-Hayy</b> الْحَيُّ</p>	<p>The Living</p>	<p>Allah never dies and Allah is without a beginning or end. This is how all life comes from Him. Allah talks, speaks, and hears us now and for all times to come.</p>
<p><b>Al-Qayyoom</b> الْقَيُّومُ</p>	<p>The Self-Subsisting and All Sustaining</p>	<p>Allah does not need support or help from anyone or anything, but He can support the entire universe.</p>
<p><b>Al-Waajid</b> الْوَّاجِدُ</p>	<p>The Finder</p>	<p>When we are lost, we can call on Allah, who will always find us when we need Him. He finds His people and sets them on the path to success.</p>

## Additional Coursework

The following content is being listed here to include items from the Waqf-e-Nau syllabus. This material can be covered by parents at home.

### Holy Qur'an

- Surah Al-Anam vv. 96-110
- Surah Al-Ra'd vv. 9-14
- Surah Al-Nahl vv. 67-71
- Surah Bani-Isra'il vv. 79-85
- Surah Al-Ha-Mim-Sajdah vv. 31 to 36
- Translation of parts 3 and 4 of the Holy Qur'an

### Salat & Prayers

Learn the following prayers:

- To obtain love of Allah
- On entering a washroom
- On leaving a washroom

### Basics of Islam

Learn the following Ahadith in Arabic with translation:

- "One who deceives us is not from us."
- "The chief of the people is one who serves them."
- "False vouch (swear) makes houses deserted."
- "One who is not thankful to people, is not thankful to Allah."
- "One who urges others to do good, gets the reward like a doer."
- "The promise of a believer is as certain as a thing in the hand."
- "The man who takes back his gift is like the one who licks his own vomit."
- "A person who sincerely repents for his sins becomes like one who has never sinned."
- "Save yourself from hell, even if it be by giving a fragment of a date (as sadqah)."
- "This world is a prison for the righteous person and heaven for a non-believer."
- "It is not permissible for a Muslim to sever relations with another Muslim brother for more than three days."

---

## History

Read the following books:

- Sirat Hadrat Masih Maud<sup>as</sup>
- Forty Gems of Beauty (First twenty Ahadith)

Learn the following revelations of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>:

- "I will spread thy message to the corners of the earth."
- "People will flock to you from every trodden path."
- "Milk has flowed down from the heavens, save it."
- "Do not place your trust in mortal life."
- "Our Lord is the Mighty One who can fix that which is broken. He can frustrate elaborate plans. None can encompass His wisdom."

## Poetry

- Meine Appney Piyaron Ki Nisbat
- Jamal-o-husne Qur'an Nure Janey Har Musalman Hai
- Wo Peshwa Humara
- Muhammad Per Humari Jan Fida Hai
- Ten couplets of Qaseedah



Rumuz-i-Auqaf -The Qur'anic Stop Signs



**One MUST  
stop at  
these signs**

○

ط

م



**One should  
pause at  
these signs**

سكتنه

وقفه

قفا



**One may OR  
may not stop at  
these signs**

ص

ج

و



**One should  
NOT stop at  
these signs**

لا

ز

ق

صلی

# **Answer Key**

**Part I**

**Exercise 1.1: Choose the correct answer for each question.**

The Holy Qur'an was revealed in:

**b. 22 years and 5 months**

The Holy Qur'an was compiled into one book under:

**a. Hadrat Abu Bakr<sup>ra</sup>**

The Holy Qur'an teaches us:

**d. All of the above**

The 53rd verse of Surah Al-Baqarah would be referenced as 53:2 since Surah Al-Baqarah is the second chapter.

**FALSE**

The Angel Mika'il brought down the verses of the Qur'an:

**FALSE**

The Holy Qur'an is the final law or Shariah for:

**d. All of mankind**

What is the best time for the recitation of the Holy Qur'an?

**a. At Fajr**

There are 114 chapters or surahs in the Qur'an.

**TRUE**

**List three prophecies contained in the Holy Qur'an.**

1. The Holy Qur'an prophesied about a time when a quicker means of transport would be used.
2. It also prophesied about the extensions of the earth, a prophecy that was fulfilled, in a way when man set his foot on the moon.
3. Another prophecy in the Qur'an is about Pharaoh. It was revealed to the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> that when Pharaoh was drowned, his body was saved and was preserved so that it may serve as a sign for future generations.

**Exercise 2.3: Answer the questions below.**

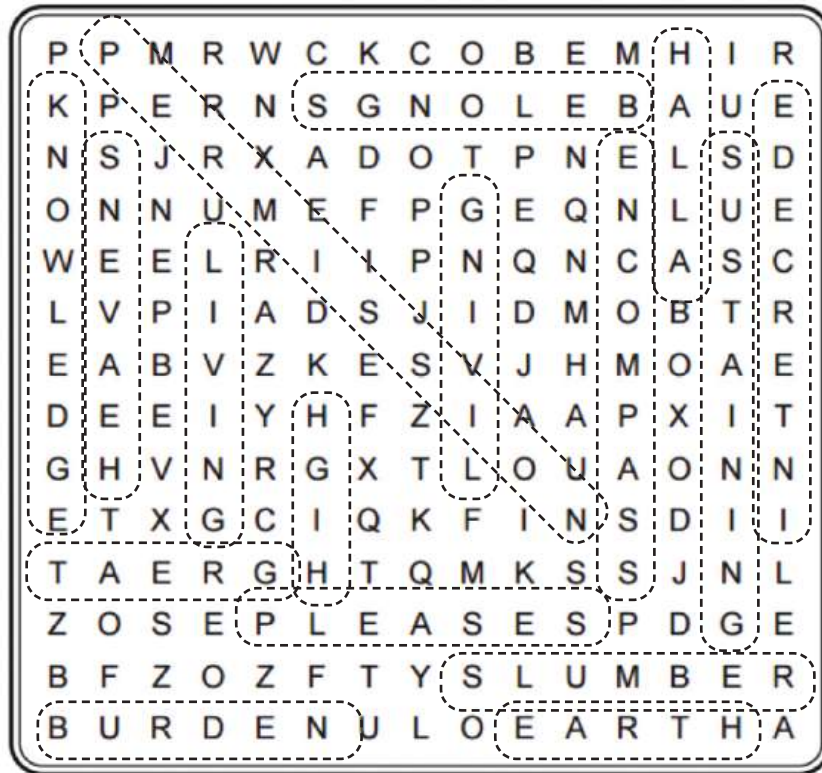
What does 'Kursi' mean?

**It means throne or a chair.**

What question does this verse answer?

**This verse beautifully describes the unity of God and His great attributes.**

**Exercise 2.4: Word Search**



**Exercise 2.6: Unscramble the words from the translation of this surah.**

- |                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. uegrfe <b>refuge</b>           | 6. matluu <b>mutual</b>               |
| 2. wnda <b>dawn</b>               | 7. nphotelsisair <b>relationships</b> |
| 3. leiv <b>evil</b>               | 8. lwob <b>blow</b>                   |
| 4. andesrks <b>darkness</b>       | 9. ynev <b>envy</b>                   |
| 5. poesvsrdaer <b>overspreads</b> | 10. stonk <b>knots</b>                |

**Exercise 2.7: Choose True or False for the statements below.**

- |   |      |       |
|---|------|-------|
| We should ask Allah to protect us from jealous people.  | True | False |
| Good and evil both exist in the world.  | True | False |
| Falaq means the dawn.   | True | False |
| A breakdown of relationships can occur through misunderstandings, and so we should pray that Allah protect our relationships. | True | False |

**Exercise 2.8: Fill in the blanks using the words in the word bank.**

Including Tasmiyah, Surah Al-Falaq has \_\_ **six** \_\_ verses.

Surah Al-Falaq was revealed in the city of \_\_ **Medina** \_\_.

In this surah, when seeking Allah's help we call Him by His attribute, \_\_ **the Lord of the Dawn** \_\_.

In this surah, we are warned that \_\_ **good** \_\_ and \_\_ **evil** \_\_ live together in this world.

Only \_\_ **Allah** \_\_ can protect us from all types of evil.

Surah Al-Falaq is chapter number \_\_\_ **113** \_\_\_ of the Holy Qur'an.

**Exercise 2.9: Complete the following questions.**

What does the word refuge mean?

**a. Shelter or protection**

What kind of harm or evil does this surah talk about?

**a. Doubt, fear, misunderstanding**

How can we save ourselves from the harm mentioned in this surah?

**a. By looking for Allah's protection**

**Exercise 2.11: Unscramble the words from the translation of this surah.**

11. uegrfe **refuge**

16. kisnange **sneaking**

12. drlo **lord**

17. eashrt **hearts**

13. ngik **king**

18. nnji **jinn**

14. kdinnma **mankind**

19. cirusaog **gracious**

15. wringpesshi **whispering**

20. eclmirfu **merciful**

**Exercise 2.13: Fill in the blanks.**

1. After bathing, the body of the deceased is wrapped in clean white sheets, which is known as a \_\_ **shroud** \_\_.
2. The funeral Prayer is held in the \_\_ **open** \_\_ or in a place built for that purpose called \_\_ **Janazah Gah** \_\_.
3. For the funeral Prayer, the body is placed \_\_ **in front** \_\_ of the Imam.

4. Everyone recites Durud when Imam says Allahu Akbar for the \_\_ **second** \_\_ time.
5. Allah! Forgive our \_\_ **living ones** \_\_ and our \_\_ **deceased ones** \_\_; and those of us who are \_\_ **present** \_\_ and those of who are \_\_ **absent** \_\_; and our \_\_ **young ones** \_\_ and old ones; and our \_\_ **males** \_\_ and our \_\_ **females** \_\_.
6. Allah! Those of us whom You \_\_ **grant life** \_\_, keep them firm on \_\_ **Islam** \_\_; and those of us whom You \_\_ **cause to die** \_\_, cause them to die in \_\_ **faith** ..
7. There are \_\_ **no (zero)** \_\_ rukus and \_\_ **no (zero)** \_\_ sajdah in funeral prayer.

**Exercise 2.16: Unscramble the words related to this prayer.**

HLALA	<b>HALAL</b>
OGOD	<b>GOOD</b>
DEEN	<b>NEED</b>
DLOR	<b>LORD</b>
LEBSGINS	<b>BLESSINGS</b>
RBEAGG	<b>BEGGAR</b>
DEVIOPR	<b>PROVIDE</b>
YPARER	<b>PRAYER</b>
ERWHTAVE	<b>WHATEVER</b>

**Exercise 3.3: Answer the questions below with reference to the passages in the book. Page numbers from the course book are provided.**

What is the literal meaning of the word "Bai'at"? (page 4)

**Bai'at means to sell oneself.**

Why did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> wait to begin taking the Bai'at of those who wished to follow him? (pages 8-10)

**His heartfelt desire was that only such blessed people whose nature was firmly established on fidelity should join this blessed Jama'at. Therefore, he waited for an occasion that should distinguish between those who were faithful and those who were hypocrites.**

Where and when did the first Bai'at take place? (page 12)

**The first Bai'at took place on March 23, 1889 at the house of Hadrat Sufi Ahmad Jan Sahib<sup>ra</sup> located in Mahalla Jadid.**

Who was the first person to take the Bai'at at the hands of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>? (page 12)

**The first person to take the Bai'at was Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>.**



**Exercise 3.4: Answer the questions with reference to the passages in the book. Page numbers from the course book are provided.**

What is Shirk? (page 17)

**d. All of the above**

What are the nine sins mentioned in Condition #2? (page 21)

- 1. falsehood**
- 2. fornication**
- 3. adultery**
- 4. trespasses of the eye**
- 5. debauchery**
- 6. dissipation**
- 7. cruelty**
- 8. dishonesty**
- 9. mischief and rebellion**

What is Ghadd Basar?

**d. All of the above**

**Exercise 3.7: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- Those who put their faith in the power of Allah, do not fear any other power. Righteous people, who place their trust in Him, can easily rely on him when they are put in difficult circumstances.
- Those who are close to Allah, find Him to be their closest ally and Protector.
- Those in power should never forget that Allah is Al-Maalik, The King and Al-Aziz, The Mighty. There are no limits to His strength, and nothing is hard for Him to do. Allah decides everyone's destiny and not even a king can compete with Allah's power.

**Exercise 3.8: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- We may be very pleased with ourselves after doing a good deed, but ultimately it is up to Allah whether He accepts that deed or not.
- It is quite possible that despite our best efforts, there is some shortcoming on our end which makes our sacrifice unacceptable to God.
- It is also quite possible that God accepts the intentions of our heart, when they come from a place of worship and sacrifice.

**Exercise 3.9: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- It is possible for Allah to create the precise circumstances needed to influence many people by providing divine help.
- When we find ourselves in a difficult situation, rather than relying on people, we should turn to God and pray to Him to help us find a solution. He alone can change the viewpoints of those we address.
- Allah can send help in ways that we could never imagine as He alone has

full control of all resources. These resources could be human or natural conditions.

**Exercise 3.10: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- The Holy Qur'an is the 'Word of Allah' and the true wealth of a Muslim. It is the ultimate source of guidance that not only teaches the perfect belief, but also how to put it into practice.
- Material wealth is not the biggest goal of believers. Instead, they focus on increasing their faith, leading righteous lives, and always trying to have a connection with Allah.

**Exercise 3.11: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- A friend in need is a friend indeed. True friends lookout for each other and are ready to help at any moment. They are not selfish, rather they are generous and have genuine concern for each other's needs.
- We should knock at "Allah's door" by praying because no friend can help us more than the most powerful friend of all. Allah is Al-Wali, the Best of Friends, and he needs nothing from us, and at the same time, He provides us with all the help we need.
- Sometimes our prayers may take a very long time for acceptance and it may make us worry but like a true friend, Allah will come to our help with all His power.

**Exercise 4.1: Choose the best answer from the questions below.**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s fathers name was:

**a. Mirza Ghulam Murtaza**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s mother's name was:

**b. Chiragh Bibi**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was born with a twin sister.

True  False

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was educated at home by tutors rather than going to a school.

True  False

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> loved to play, was loud, and very mischievous as a child.

True  False

What is the date of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s birth?

**The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was born on February 13, 1835.**

How old was the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> when he was first married?

**b. 15**

What does the word “maseetar” mean?

**b. One who spends most of his time in a mosque.**

What was the name of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s first wife?

**Hurmat Bibi**

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> appeared in a dream to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> when he was 45 years old.

True

False

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> debated with Christian missionaries who were spreading Christianity in India.

True

False

Why did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> take a job in Sialkot?

**c. To respect his father's wishes**

Why did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> return to Qadian in 1868?

**b. His mother was ill and dying**

**Exercise 4.2: Choose the best answer from the questions below.**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> refused to debate with this man for the sake of debate:

**b. Muhammad Hussain Batalvi**

In the first revelation, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was told that these people would seek blessings from his clothing:

**b. Kings**

Translate the revelation below:

أَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِكَافٍ عَبْدَهُ ط

**Is Allah not sufficient for His servant?**

What was the name of the man who sued the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in the Post Office case?

**Ralia Ram**

What was the name of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s first book?

**b. Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya—The Ahmadiyya Arguments**

Mujaddid means:

**b. A reformer**

Who did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> see in a dream telling him that he was appointed a Reformer by Allah?

**b. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>**

What was the name of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s second wife?

**a. Hadrat Sayyeda Nusrat Jahan<sup>ra</sup>**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was worried about how he would support himself when his father passed away.  True  False

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> wrote his first book to defend Islam against the Christians and Hindus who were attacking the religion.  True  False

This appointment as Mujaddid or Reformer was in the year 1882.  True  False

**Exercise 4.3: Fill in the blanks using information from the text above.**

In March of \_\_ **1885** \_\_ Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad<sup>as</sup> published an advertisement proclaiming that he was the \_\_ **Reformer** \_\_ of the Age.

One of the divine signs that was shown to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and his companion Hadrat Maulawi Abdullah Sanauri<sup>ra</sup> was the appearance of \_\_ **red drops** \_\_ on the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>'s clothes.

Another sign was the unusual appearance of \_\_ **trailblazing meteors** \_\_ in the sky in November of 1885.

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> spent 40 days in the city of \_\_ **Hoshiarpur** \_\_ under Divine Guidance to pray.

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and his second wife, Hadrat Sayyida Nusrat Jahan<sup>ra</sup> had \_\_ **ten** \_\_ children and out of them, \_\_ **five** \_\_ survived and lived long lives.

**Exercise 4.4: Write in short answers for the questions below.**

Who was the first man to take Bai'at at the hands of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>? Where and when did this take place?

**The first person to take Bai'at was Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>. The first Bai'at ceremony took place at the house of Hadrat Soofi Munshi Ahmad Jan<sup>ra</sup> at Ludhiana on March 23, 1889.**

What two booklets did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> publish in 1891? What was the message contained in these books?

**The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> published two small booklets called 'Fath-e-Islam' and 'Taudih-i-Maram' in the year 1891. The message in these booklets was that he was divinely appointed as the Promised Messiah and Jesus Christ was a prophet and had died as other human beings before him.**

What were the topics that Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi and the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> debated? Who won this debate?

**In this debate, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> proved that the Holy Qur'an took priority over the Hadith or sayings of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>, but his opponent Maulawi Muhammad Hussain Batalvi took the view that Hadith could supersede what is written in the Holy Qur'an if there was some confusion. However, Batalvi was clearly defeated in this contest with the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.**

What topic of modern Christianity was debated during the Jang-e-Muqaddas?

**The topic of this debate was the claim of modern Christianity that Jesus Christ was God.**

When and where was the first Jalsa (convention)? How many people attended?

**First Annual Convention or Jalsa Salana was held in December 1891. Promised Messiahas selected 27th, 28th and 29th of December of every year to be the period in which this Annual Convention would convene. The first Jalsa Salana took place in Qadian in the Aqsa Mosque and was attended by seventy- five people.**

## **Part II**

### **Exercise 2.18: Answer the following questions.**

In Surah Al-Zilzāl, what kinds of natural phenomenon does Allah tell us about during the days of the messiah?

**Surah Al-Zilzāl talks about the many ways in which the earth will change in the days of the Promised Messiah and Mahdi. Allah tells us that the earth will be affected physically by violent earthquakes and catastrophes.**

What does the phrase "the earth throws up her burdens mean"?

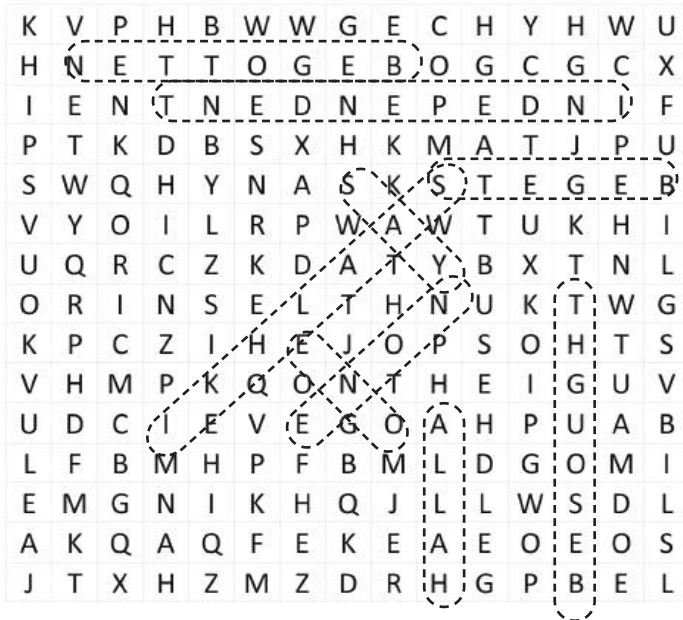
**The phrase "the earth throws up her burden" can signify three meanings. One, that there will be an expulsion of mineral wealth from underneath the earth. Second, there will be a vast release of all kinds of scientific, geological and**



archeological information. Finally, people will revolt against the oppression of their rulers and will shed the burden of subjection.

“On that day will she tell her news”. Who is being referred to as ‘she’?  
The earth

**Exercise 2.21: Find the keywords from the translation of this surah in the word search below.**



**Exercise 2.24: Place the verses of Surah Al-Nasr in order.**

\_\_ 3\_\_ And thou seest men entering the religion of Allah in troops,

\_\_ 4\_\_ Glorify thy Lord, with His praise, and seek forgiveness of Him. Surely, He is Oft-Returning with compassion.

\_\_ 1\_\_ In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.

\_\_ 2\_\_ When the help of Allah comes, and the victory,

**Exercise 2.26: Fill in the blanks for the translation of this prayer.**

O our \_\_ **Lord** \_\_, we have \_\_ **wronged** \_\_ ourselves; and if Thou \_\_ **forgive** \_\_ us not and have not \_\_ **mercy** \_\_ on us, we shall \_\_ **surely** \_\_ be of the \_\_ **lost**\_\_.

**Exercise 2.28: Fill in the blanks for the translation of this prayer.**

And Say, My \_\_ **Lord** \_\_, forgive and have \_\_ **mercy** \_\_ and Thou art the \_\_ **best** \_\_ of those who \_\_ **show mercy** \_\_.



**Exercise 2.30: Fill in the blanks for the statements below.**

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> used to recite Surah \_\_\_ **Al-A'lā** \_\_\_ during the \_\_ **irst** \_\_ rakah of **Friday**\_, **Eid**\_, and **Vitr**\_ prayers.

By reflecting on **God's**\_ qualities and using our **spiritual**\_ and **mental**\_ faculties, we can become a reflection of **God's**\_ attributes.

The Holy Qur'an is like the **sun**\_, **the moon**\_ and the **stars**\_ because it is a phenomenon whose usefulness to man will continue until the end of time.

**Exercise 2.35: Answer the questions below.**

**Use the commentary of the Holy Qur'an and research when this surah was revealed.**

This surah was revealed very early at Mecca.

**Four symbols were mentioned in this surah which represent four periods of evolution in human history. Complete the following table with this information.**

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Period of Evolution</b>
The Fig	Hadrat Adam <sup>as</sup>
The Olive	Hadrat Nuh <sup>as</sup>
Mount Sinai	Hadrat Musa <sup>as</sup>
Town of Security	Birth place of Islam

**Exercise 2.38: Fill in the blanks.**

Surely, we sent it down in the \_\_ **Night** \_\_ of \_\_ **Destiny** \_\_.

The Night of Destiny is better than a \_\_ **thousand months** \_\_.

It is \_\_ **all peace** \_\_ till the rising of the dawn.

**Exercise 2.41: Complete the translation below using the words in the word bank below.**

O our Lord, grant us of our \_\_ **spouses** \_\_ and children, the \_\_ **delight** \_\_ of our \_\_ **eyes** \_\_ and make each of us a \_\_ **leader** \_\_ for the \_\_ **righteous** \_\_.

O Allah! We make You a \_\_ **shield** \_\_ against the \_\_ **enemy** \_\_ and we seek Your \_\_ **protection** \_\_ against their \_\_ **evil designs** \_\_.

**Exercise 3.14: In your own words, talk about what it means to protect other Muslims from your tongue? Give examples, if possible.**

Protecting other Muslims from our tongues means NOT unjustly accusing someone, NOT using harsh language, and NOT speaking ill of others behind their backs.

**Exercise 3.15: Answer the questions with reference to the third condition of Bai'at.**

What is the 3rd condition of Bai'at about?

**c. Salat**

What is istighfar?

**Istighfar means to ask forgiveness for one's sins.**

**Exercise 3.16: Answer the questions with reference to the passages in the book. Page numbers from the course book are provided.**

Discuss how can you cause harm to another with your tongue?

**We can harm others with our tongues by doing many wrong things such as unjustly accusing someone, using harsh language, or speaking ill of them behind their backs.**

Read the incident of Hadrat Husain<sup>ra</sup> on page 78 of the course book. What verse did the slave quote?

**a. Surah Al 'Imran, verse 135**

Read the hadith on page 84 of the course book. Where does anger come from and what is a suggested method of dissipating anger?

**Anger comes from Satan. One method of dissipating anger is to perform ablution (wudu). Another way is that if you are angry while standing up, then sit down. If you still feel angry, then lie down.**

**Exercise 3.17: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book. Page numbers from the course book are provided where applicable.**

Define the word decree.

**Divine decree means that Allah has decided about something to happen at a certain time and it will happen at that time. We believe that Allah is the only one who has control over everything in the universe. He has power to do anything that He wants. When Allah decides that something will happen, it always happens, even if it looks impossible to us.**

What is the importance of trials in the life of a believer?

If a believer goes through a trial in life and he is steadfast and patient and prays to Allah, then Allah rewards him for his steadfastness and he can gain closeness to Allah.

**Exercise 3.20: Answer the short questions below.**

What is the central principle of all religions?

The central principle of all religions is the existence of God, and man's relationship with Him.

What does Islam mean?

The word Islam is derived from the Arabic word "salima" which means peace, purity, submission and obedience

Why do we believe in Islam?

There are many reasons. Please refer to text in the "Why I Believe in Islam" section.

Why does Islam instruct the wealthy to look after the needs of the poor?

We have to fulfill Huququllah and Huqooq-ul-Ibad. Looking after the needs of the needy is Huqooq-ul-Ibad (Rights of Mankind).

What happens if nations transgress against each other?

It can lead to war, disorder, and lack of peace in society.

**Exercise 3.21: Fill in the blanks using information in the topic above.**

Islam claims that the \_\_ **creator** \_\_ of this universe is a \_\_ **living** \_\_ God.

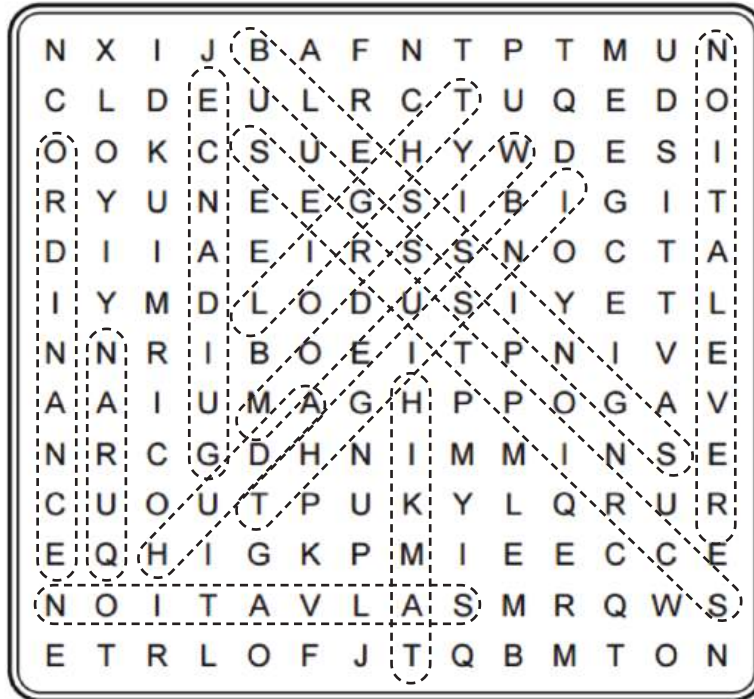
The word Islam is derived from the \_\_ **Arabic** \_\_ word " \_\_ **salima** \_\_ " which means peace.

Islam says no conflict can exist between the \_\_ **word** \_\_ of God (religion) and the \_\_ **work** \_\_ of God (science).

Islam draws attention to the \_\_ **rights** \_\_ of parents and the \_\_ **duties** \_\_ which children \_\_ **owe** \_\_ to their parents.

Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has said, “A person who brings his \_\_ **daughter** \_\_ up well and gives her a good \_\_ **upbringing** \_\_ education, thereby earns \_\_ **paradise** \_\_\_.”

**Exercise 3.23: Solve the puzzle and review the key concepts in the search words.**



**Exercise 3.24: Five additional names of the Holy Qur'an.**

Answers can be found at <https://www.alislam.org/library/books/Essence-of-the-Holy-Quran.pdf> on page xiv.

**Exercise 3.25: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- When we compare our blessings with those who are less fortunate than we are, it makes us realize how truly blessed we are.
- It is important that we remind ourselves of the small blessings which we often take for granted when we see others who have not been favored in the same ways.
- Thinking and speaking positively will influence people in a stronger way than thinking and speaking negatively.

**Exercise 3.26: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- Always have faith in Allah because He alone can give us strength at the time of need. He can change the course of the inevitable.
- The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> had absolute faith in the power of Allah and he taught us that we can have a similar connection with Allah.

**Exercise 3.27: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- Taking care of a guest is an honor and should be treated as such.
- We should always be watchful over the needs of others as they may be much greater than our own.
- All good deeds are appreciated by Allah, especially those where we give others precedence over ourselves.

**Exercise 3.28: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- When doing good deeds or donating for good causes, always do them for the sake of Allah. It is hypocritical if you do a good deed to show off to others as Allah does not like those who do good deeds for show.

**Exercise 3.29: What is the lesson learned from this story?**

- Allah is our Creator, Protector, and Master. Only He decides when and how we are born and only He decides when and how we will die.
- Only Allah can save us from impossible situations.
- Allah is the only one who can help, when every worldly option fails.

**Exercise 3.32: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.**

**What are some innovations we face in our daily lives that keep us away from Allah?**

Television, Internet, Social Media, cell phones, technology, movies etc.

**Read the first paragraph on page 114. What two steps are given to help create a love for the Holy Qur'an?**

1. Every Ahmadi should make it obligatory on themselves to recite a minimum of two to three rukus of the Holy Qur'an daily.
2. Every Ahmadi should read the Holy Qur'an with translation.

**Name the two keys to finding God and His blessings from page 117.**

The two keys to finding God and His blessings are:

1. One should shun associating anyone with God and indulging in innovations.
2. One should be obeying the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> and not following personal lusts and base desires.

**Exercise 3.33: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.**

**What form of arrogance is found in wider circles? (page 124)**

On page 124 of the course book, there is mention of a form of arrogance among wider circles. It is said that due to arrogance some nations, countries, and governments look down upon the rest. They despise poor nations and countries.



**Read the hadith by Abdullah bin Mas'ud. What is the difference between being arrogant and being elegant? (page 126)**

Dressing up in nice clothes and looking good is not arrogance. Allah is Elegant and likes elegance, that is, He likes beauty. Real arrogance is when man rejects what is true, considers people lowly, holds them in contempt and treats them badly. If you can wear and have nice things, but be very conscious of how you treat others, then owning nice things is not against the spirit of Islam.

**Exercise 3.36: Complete the translation below using the words in the word bank.**

In **every** matter, **moderation** is best.

A person may adopt his **friend's religion** (or way of life), hence he should **watch** who he **befriends**.

**Exercise 3.37: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.**

**Read the first paragraph on page 140 and the hadith on page 142. What two things have we been asked repeatedly to do to honor our faith?**

1. Worship only One Allah
2. Surrender yourself completely to Allah and everything should be purely for Allah, and nothing should be considered our own possession

**Why does the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> stress the certainty of faith so much? (page 145)**

Certainty rescues one from sin and gives one strength to do good. Certainty makes one a true lover of Allah. Without certainty, one cannot come out of a dark life, nor can one attain the Holy Spirit.

These words mean when we are confident in our faith, we make better daily decisions about situations. When we are underconfident about our faith, we may easily be moved into a path of vices and ills. In order to remain on the good path, it is necessary to be firmly resolved in your belief.

**Exercise 3.38: Answer the question with reference to passages in the book.**

**What are the six obligations that a Muslim has towards other Muslims? (page 155)**

Every Muslim has six obligations with regard to other Muslims:

1. When he meets him, he should say 'Assalamo Alaikum'
2. When one sneezes, he should say, 'Yarhamukumullah' [may Allah have mercy on you]
3. When he is sick, he should visit him
4. When one calls him for help, he responds to him
5. When one dies, he comes to his funeral
6. And he desires for them what he desires for himself, and even in his absence he wishes him well

**Exercise 3.39: Answer the questions with reference to passages in the book.****The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> believes that his blessings are a result of what actions? (page 181)**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> believes that his blessings are purely as a result of the Grace of Allah and not due to any actions that he has taken. In this way, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> gives Allah all the praise and considers himself to be just a resource through which God's commands are being carried out. It is a sign of humility and meekness.

**What does it mean to shatter the cross? (page 183)**

It means to find holes in the Christian doctrine which would cause people to understand that their belief in this doctrine is unwarranted. It did not mean,

**Exercise 4.5: Write in a short answer for the question below.****What were the heavenly signs in favor of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>? Have such heavenly signs ever been presented for any other prophet?**

The heavenly signs were that during the month of Ramadan, lunar eclipse will take place on the first night among the three possible nights (13<sup>th</sup>, 14<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup>) of lunar eclipse, which is the 13<sup>th</sup>; and Solar Eclipse will take place on the middle day among the three possible days (27<sup>th</sup>, 28<sup>th</sup> and 29<sup>th</sup>) of solar eclipse, which is the 28<sup>th</sup>.

**Exercise 4.6: Write in short answers for the questions below.****What is the significance of the gown of Hadrat Baba Nanak?**

The verses from the Holy Qur'an are written all over the gown of Hadrat Baba Nanak. This was the realization of two dreams of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> which he had in the year 1872. In those dreams Hadrat Baba Nanak had told him that, he in fact believed in the faith of Islam.

**Who was Hadrat Khawaja Ghulam Farid, and what did he write in his letter to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>?**

Hadrat Khawaja Ghulam Fareed was a saint. He wrote a letter to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> in Arabic, in which he confirmed the truth of the claim of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and expressed his great respect for him.

**Exercise 4.7: Write in short answers for the questions below.****What doctrine of Christianity is proven wrong in the book, *Jesus in India*?**

*Jesus in India* disproves the Christian doctrine that Jesus<sup>as</sup> was raised from the Cross in some supernatural manner because he was the literal son of God. The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> explained how Allah saved Jesus<sup>as</sup> from an undignified death on the Cross and he had a natural death in Kashmir many years later. In this way, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> broke the doctrine of the Cross.

**Who was Pandit Lekh Ram, and what was the significance of his death?**

Pundit Lekh Ram was a famous Arya leader. He was notorious for using abusive language against the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>. His death came about as a fulfilment of a prophecy of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. In this prophecy, God had revealed to the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> that the death of Pandit Lekh Ram was to occur, as a punishment due to his abusive language against the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> of Islam.

**What similarity is there between Hadrat Isa<sup>as</sup> (Jesus) and the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, regarding the false case? How does this parallel further prove the claim of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>?**

False cases of attempted murder were registered against both the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and Hadrat Isa<sup>as</sup>.

**Exercise 4.8: Write in short answers for the questions below.****What is the significance of Khutbah Ilhamiyyah?**

This sermon was revealed to the Promised Messiah by Allah. The Promised Messiah gave this sermon in Arabic language. It was divine revelation which gave him this extraordinary power to speak in Arabic.

**Exercise 4.9: Complete the questions below.****When did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> issue the first written statement of his status of prophethood?**

In 1901, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> issued the first written statement of his status of prophethood. The title of this statement was "Aik Ghalti ka Izala" or Clarification of an Error.

**In the divine revelation: "I will protect all those who are within your house," what is meant by house?**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> explained that this Divine revelation included not only

those who were within the physical boundary of his house, but also all those who were the true believers in Ahmadiyyat

**Who was Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif<sup>ra</sup>?**

Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif<sup>ra</sup> was a prominent member of the court of the Ruler of Kabul in Afghanistan. He was stoned to death in a very barbaric manner, at the instigation of fanatic religious leaders, simply because he had accepted Ahmadiyyat.

**What happened in Kabul the day after Hadrat Sahibzada Abd-ul-Latif<sup>ra</sup> was martyred?**

On the very next day after this incident took place, a terrible epidemic of cholera broke out in Kabul, and not only several of those people died who were responsible for this stoning to death, but several thousand other citizens of Kabul also died of cholera.

**Exercise 4.10: Complete the following questions.**

**Who was Dr. Dowie, and what was his false claim?**

Dr. Alexander Dowie was an American from Zion. He claimed to be a prophet of God.

**How was Dr. Dowie humiliated and proven false?**

Dr. Dowie had a sudden attack of paralysis while he was addressing an audience. His followers soon revolted against him and dislodged him from his position under charges of financial misconduct and other irregularities. His claim was proven false when he died on 9th March 1907, in a state of humiliation.

**What booklet did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> write before passing away?**

Paigham-e-Sulh, (A Message of Reconciliation)

**When did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> pass away?**

May 26, 1908

**Exercise 4.11: Match the key concepts from the life of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.**



**Exercise 4.12: Choose the correct answers for the following questions.**

Which statement appeals most to common sense?

**b. A human being looks to be dead but he is unconscious.**

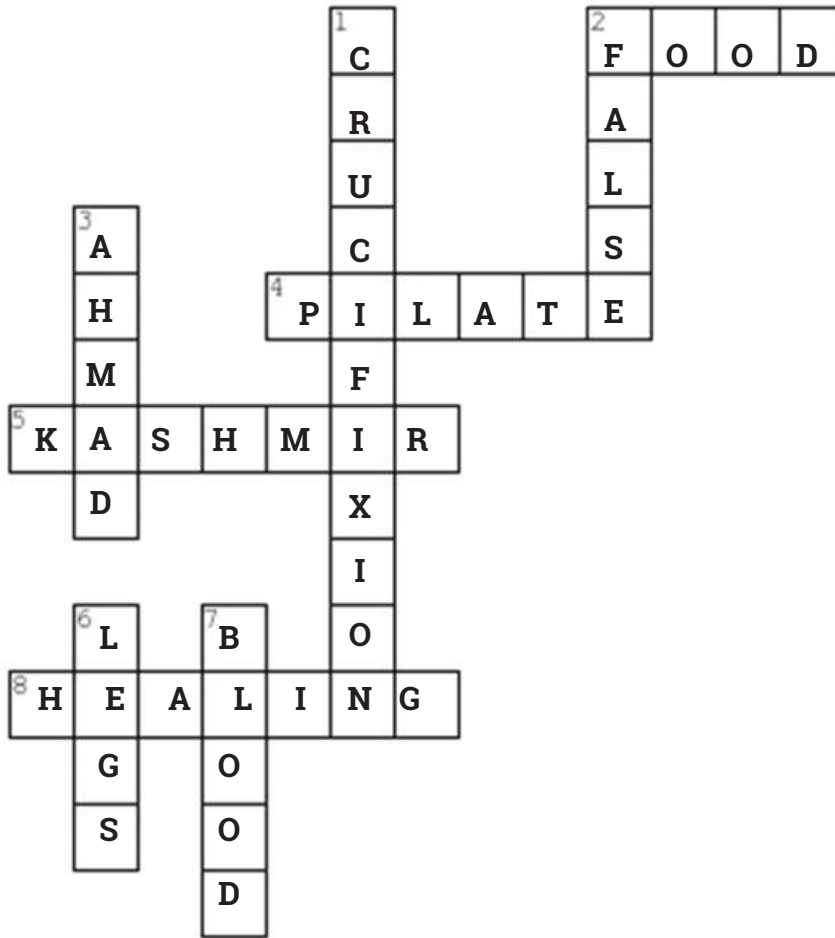
Why did Jesus<sup>as</sup> make the journey to the east?

**b. He was in search of the lost tribes of Israel.**

In order to show his disciples that he was in fact, alive, Jesus<sup>as</sup> denied being an apparition and even asked for food to eat to prove his humanity.

**TRUE**

Exercise 4.13: Use the vocabulary from the summary of Jesus<sup>as</sup> in India to complete the crossword puzzle below.





**Exercise 4.14: Choose the correct location or artifact for the descriptions provided.**

First house of worship built by Hadrat Adam <sup>as</sup> for the worship of One God.	Ka'bah	Qibla	Dome of the Rock
Place where Hadrat Abu Bakr <sup>ra</sup> and the Holy Prophet <sup>sa</sup> hid during their migration.	Cave Thaur	Cave Hira	Cave Hira
A well located inside the Masjid Al Haram.	Mina	Qibla	Zamzam
A special black stone embedded in a corner of the Ka'bah.	Al-Hajar-ul-Aswad	Hijrat Medina	Hoshiarpur
The Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> was given the glad tidings of a Promised Son after 40 days of prayers in this city.	Qadian	Hoshiarpur	Rabwah
Location of Minarat-ul-Masih and Masjid Mubarak.	Qadian	Hoshiarpur	Rabwah
Town in Pakistan where the second & third Khalifatul-Masih are laid to rest.	Rabwah	Punjab	Karachi
The farewell address of the Holy Prophet <sup>sa</sup> was given here.	Mount Hira	Mount Arafat	Karbala

**Exercise 4.15: Choose true or false for each statement below.**

Hadith is a saying of the Promised Messiah <sup>as</sup> .	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
Mu'atta Imam Malik is the most authentic book.	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
Hadith were compiled 400 years after Hijra.	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
When combined, these six authentic books supersede Holy Qur'an.	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
Sittah means seven.	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
Mu'atta Imam Malik is part of the Sihah Sittah.	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
Sunnah are the practical examples of the Holy Prophet <sup>sa</sup> .	<input checked="" type="radio"/> True	False

**Exercise 4.16: Answer the questions below.**

**When did the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> pass away?**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> pass away on May 26, 1908

**How many people accepted bai'at at the hands of the first khalifa of Ahmadiyyat?**

1200 people accepted bai'at at the hands of the first khalifa of Ahmadiyyat.

**Where was Khalifat-ul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> born?**

Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> was born in Bhera, Punjab

**The family of Khalifat-ul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> were descendants of whom?**

The family of Khalifat-ul-Masih I were descendants of Hadrat Umar

**What was the profession of Khalifat-ul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup>?**

Khalifatul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> was a learned scholar of Qur'anic studies, language and natural medicine. He was a physician.

**What were the roles fulfilled by Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> in Qadian?**

He taught the Holy Qur'an and Ahadith to the children of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> and to hundreds of other students. He served as a teacher of the Arabic language at the Taleem-ul-Islam High School. He was appointed President of the Sadr Anjuman Ahmadiyya, Qadian. He contributed to the newspapers Al-Hakam and Al-Badr and completed the translation of the Holy Qur'an.

**List at least 3 accomplishments during the life of Hadrat Khalifat-ul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup>.**

List any 3 from page 128.

**Exercise 4.17: Fill in the blanks using information given in the text.**

In 1865-66, at the age of 25, he traveled to \_\_ **Mecca** \_\_ to perform Hajj.

Khalifat-ul-Masih I<sup>ra</sup> established a school of \_\_ **Qur'anic** \_\_ and started a \_\_ **clinic** \_\_ that offered treatment in \_\_ **natural** \_\_ medicine.

Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> was the \_\_ **first** \_\_ person to take \_\_ **bai'at** \_\_ at the hands of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>.

He served as a teacher in Arabic in the \_\_ **Ta'lim-ul-Islam** \_\_ High School.

He was appointed \_\_ **President** \_\_ the Sadr Anjuman Ahmadiyya, Qadian.

On March 5, 1910, Hudur<sup>ra</sup> laid the foundation-stone of \_\_ **Masjid Noor** \_\_.

Hadrat Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup> passed away on \_\_ **March 13, 1914** \_\_, he was \_\_ **73** \_\_ years old.

**Exercise 4.18: Answer the questions below.**

**Who was the father of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>?**

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was the father of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>.

**How old was he when he became the second Khalifa?** 25 years old

**Why is he called the "Promised Son"?**

He was the Promised son of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> because his birth was foretold by God Almighty.

**What were some of the qualities that were foretold in the prophecy about him?**

He would be extremely intelligent and highly learned, and his fame would spread to the ends of the earth and nations would be blessed through him.

**In 1934, he established the scheme of:** Tahrik-i-Jadid

**What was the main idea behind Tahrik-i-Jadid?**

Tahrik-i- Jadid was established to promote missionary work in foreign countries. Because of this scheme, various foreign missions were opened and mosques were built.

**What was the reason for the establishment of a new center in Rabwah?** Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup> along with the Jamaat members moved from

Qadian to Pakistan after Pakistan became an independent country in August 1947.

**When was Waqf-e-Jadid established? And what was the purpose of this scheme?**

In 1957, Waqf-e-Jadid was initiated to expand missionary work to educate and impart religious training to rural population inside Pakistan.

**What are some of the accomplishments during the life of Hadrat Khalifatul-Masih II<sup>ra</sup>?**

See page 133/134.

**For how many years was Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> the khalifa of the Jamaat?**

Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad<sup>ra</sup> was the khalifa of the Jamaat for 52 years.

**Exercise 4.19: Answer the questions below.**

**What was the purpose of the Fadl-i-Umar Foundation?**

In 1965, Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> established the Fadl-i-Umar Foundation in memory of his father, who was named Fadl-i-Umar in a revelation of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. The purpose of this foundation was to carry on all the works in which the departed khalifa had taken particular interest. The main objectives of the foundation are to assist in research work, new missionary venture, new educational effort, and economic welfare.

**What were the main objectives of the Centenary Jubilee Scheme?**

- To bring the message of Islam to the ends of the earth
- To establish additional Jamaat Mission houses
- To publish Islamic literature in 100 languages
- To install a modern printing press in Pakistan
- To establish a radio station in an African country
- To translate the Holy Qur'an into 6 languages

**When were Ahmadi Muslims declared non-Muslims?**

On Sep 7, 1974, The National Assembly of Pakistan passed an amendment to the Constitution, which declared the Ahmadis in Pakistan to be non-Muslims.

**What was the name of the Prime Minister of Pakistan, and how did he die?**

The Prime Minister of Pakistan was Zulfiqar Ali Bhutto, who used to take great pride for declaring Ahmadi Muslims as non-Muslims. He met a horrific end on July 5, 1977. He was removed from office by General Zia-ul Haq and then was hanged on April 4, 1979.

**Which prophecy of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> was fulfilled during the Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>?**

“Kings will seek blessings from your garments.” This prophecy was first fulfilled during the time of the Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> in the person of Sir Singhate who was elected Governor General of Gambia, West Africa. When he was elected to this prestigious office, he earnestly prayed for some time. Then he informed Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> that he wanted to obtain blessings from the garments of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. Accordingly, a piece of the clothing was sent to him from Rabwah.

**How long was the Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup>?**

The Khilafat of Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> lasted for 17 years

**Exercise 4.20: Circle True or False for the statements below.**

Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad <sup>th</sup> was the grandson of Hadrat Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmud Ahmad <sup>ra</sup> .	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
He obtained the degree Shahid (Religious Scholar) from Punjab University.	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
He was born in Qadian.	<input checked="" type="radio"/> True	False
The first international bai'at (pledge of allegiance) took place in 1993.	<input checked="" type="radio"/> True	False
Waqf-e-Nau scheme was started by Hadrat Mirza Nasir Ahmad <sup>th</sup> .	True	<input checked="" type="radio"/> False
MTA stands for a 24-hour television station run by the Jamaat.	<input checked="" type="radio"/> True	False
“Da’wat Ilallah”, means calling people to Allah.	<input checked="" type="radio"/> True	False

**Exercise 4.21: Complete the following short answer questions.**

**Why did Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> leave Pakistan?**

Another wave of violence, persecution and severe restrictions against the Ahmadis started, which culminated in Ordinance 20 on April 26, 1984. Under this ordinance, Ahmadi Muslims were not allowed to recite the Holy Qur’an, Salat, Kalimah or even say As-Salamu ‘Alaikum to anyone. Violating Ordinance 20 triggered the imposition of fines, imprisonment, and death. Thousands of Ahmadi Muslims were jailed. It became increasingly difficult to safeguard the institution of Khilafat in Pakistan in view of the new restrictions. Due to all these reasons Hadrat Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>th</sup> left Pakistan.

**What is a mubahala?**

Mubahala is a prayer contest. This meant that by offering prayers for God’s

judgment, God would inflict His sign of wrath on the liar.

**What happened because of the mubahala?**

On August 17th, 1988, General Zia-ul-Haq's plane blew up in the sky and everyone on board died.

**What mistake did General Zia-ul-Haq make in his letter?**

General Zia ul Haq sent a letter to all seaports and airports stating that "Mirza Nasir Ahmad" instead of "Mirza Tahir Ahmad" not be allowed to leave Pakistan.

**Due to Ordinance 20 what difficulties were faced by Ahmadi Muslims in Pakistan?**

Under this ordinance, Ahmadi Muslims were not allowed to recite the Holy Qur'an, Salat, Kalimah or even say As-Salamu 'Alaikum to anyone. Violating Ordinance 20 triggered the imposition of fines, imprisonment and death. Thousands of Ahmadi Muslims were jailed.

**How was the following prophecy fulfilled, "I shall cause thy message to reach the corners of the earth"?**

For the first time in the history of Ahmadiyyat and Islam, a Friday sermon was transmitted live to the world through MTA, thus fulfilling the revelation of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>, "I shall cause thy message to reach the corners of the earth" – in an entirely new way.

**Exercise 4.22: Complete the following short answer questions.**

**When and where was Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> born?**

Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> was born on September 15, 1950, in Rabwah, Pakistan.

**Where did he receive his primary education?**

Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> received his primary education at Taleem-ul-Islam High School Rabwah.

**Which country did he go to after devoting his life for the service of Islam?**

He went to Ghana.

**What was his biggest achievement in Ghana?**

He was the founding principal of the Ahmadiyya Secondary School in Salaga.

**What was the reason for his arrest in 1999?**

He was arrested on the false charges of 'Blasphemy' and 'Disturbance of Public Order', as part of the growing wave of persecution of Ahmadi Muslims in Pakistan.



**When was he elected as a khalifa?**

He was elected as khalifa on April 22, 2003.

**How did Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> respond to the persecution of Ahmadi Muslims?**

His Holiness instructed Ahmadi Muslims worldwide to respond only through prayers and entirely peaceful means. Hadrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup> expressly forbade any violence.

**What can we do to promote peace in the world?**

We can promote peace in the world through prayers and entirely peaceful means.

**Exercise 4.23: Review of Khulafa-e-Ahmadiyyat.**

**Write the names of the Khalifatul-Masih in chronological order.**

1. Hadrat Khalifat-ul-Masih I Al Hajj Hafiz Hakeem Maulana Nooruddin<sup>ra</sup>
2. Hadrat Khalifat-ul-Masih II Mirza Bashir-ud-Din Mahmood Ahmad<sup>ra</sup>
3. Hadrat Khalifat-ul-Masih III Hafiz Mirza Nasir Ahmad<sup>rh</sup>
4. Hadrat Khalifat-ul-Masih IV Mirza Tahir Ahmad<sup>rh</sup>
5. Hadrat Khalifat-ul-Masih V Mirza Masroor Ahmad<sup>aba</sup>



# **Glossary**

**Abū Bakr** ابوبكر : The first successor to the Holy Prophet, Muhammad, peace and blessings of Allah be on him.

**Abū Dāwūd** ابو داود : A collection of Ahadith. The compiler of this collection.

**Aḥādīth** احاديث : Plural of ḥadīth.

**Aḥmad, Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Bashīr-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd** (1889-1965) حضرت مرزا بشير الدين محمود احمد : Second successor (1914-1965) to the Promised Messiah, peace be on him.

**Aḥmad, Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Ghulām** (1835-1908) حضرت مرزا غلام احمد, peace be on him: The Promised Messiah. Claimed to be the Second Advent of Jesus.

**Aḥmad, Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Masroor** (1950-...) حضرت مرزا مسرور احمد, may Allah strengthen him with His mighty support: Fifth successor (2003-...) to the Promised Messiah (peace be on him).

**Aḥmad, Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Nāṣir** (1909-1982) حضرت مرزا ناصر احمد, Allah's mercy be on him: Third successor (1965-1982) to the Promised Messiah, peace be on him.

**Aḥmad, Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Ṭāhir** (1928-2003) حضرت مرزا طاہر احمد, Allah's mercy be on him: Fourth successor (1982-2003) to the Promised Messiah, peace be on him.

‘**Alaihis-Salām** عليه السلام : may peace be on him.

‘**Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib**: The fourth successor to the Holy Prophet, Muhammad, his cousin and son-in-law.

**Allāh** الله : The one and only God.

**Allahu Akbar** الله اكبر : Allah is the Greatest

**Amīr, Ameer** امير : Commander, Head. National head of the Ahmadiyyah Community.

‘**Aṣr** عصر : Late afternoon formal Islamic worship

**As-Salāmu ‘Alaikum Wa Raḥmatullāh** اَلْسَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَةُ اللهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ : Peace be with you and blessings of Allāh.

**Aṭfāl** اطفال : children. Plural of ṭifl. Members of Majlis Aṭfāl-ul-Ahmadiyya.

**Ayat-ul-Kursi (pronounced as aa-ya-tul-kur-see)**: Surah Al Baqarah, v. 256

**Bai‘at** بَيْعَت : pledge of initiation, covenant of association. Entering the pledge of allegiance with the Ahmadiyya Khilāfat. pledging of allegiance.

**Brahman** برہمن : Hindu priest. Member of Hindu elite class.

**Bukhārī** بخاری : The most reliable source of the sayings of the Holy Prophet Muḥammad, peace and blessings of Allāh be on him.

**Ḍammah** ضمہ : a pronunciation sign equivalent to the sound of o or u in English.

**Durūd, Durood, Darūd, Darood** درود : blessings, benediction, salutation. ṣalāt al-an-Nabiyy. Prayer for the Holy Prophet of Islam.

**Eid** عيد : See ‘Īd

**Eid-ul-Adha**: See ‘Īd-ul-Adha

**Eid-ul-Fitr**: See ‘Īd-ul-Fitr

**Fajr** فجر : The dawn-to-sunrise Islamic formal worship.

**Fatḥa** فَتْحَة : a pronunciation sign on a letter indicating a sound similar to that added by a in English.

**Fath-e-Islam**: Victory of Islam

**Ghadd Basar:** lowering of eyes

**Ḥadīth** حديث : Saying of the Holy Prophet Muḥammad, ṣallallāhu ‘alaihi wa sallam. a verified account of a statement or action of the Prophet Muhammad. Plural Aḥādīth.

**Ḥaḍrat** حضرت [Hadhrat, Hazrat]: His Holiness

**Ḥikmah** حكمة : wisdom, foresight

**Ḥikmat** حكمة : wisdom, foresight, practice of medicine

**Ḥuḍūr** [Ḥudhūr, Ḥuzūr, Huzoor] حضور : His Honor, His Holiness, Your Honor, Your Holiness. In Urdu, it is spelled Ḥaḍūr [Ḥaḍoor, Ḥadhūr, Ḥadhoor, Ḥazūr, Ḥazoor].

**Ḥuzūr, Huzoor** حضور: see Ḥuḍūr

**‘Īd** عيد : Muslim religious celebration, festival. Eid.

**‘Īdul-Aḍḥā** عيد الاضحى : Festival of sacrifices

**‘Īd-ul-Fiṭr, ‘Īd al-Fiṭr** عيد الفطر : Celebration at the end of Ramaḍān.

**‘Īd mubarak** عيد مبارك : Felicitation of ‘Īd.

**Ifṭār** افطار : breaking the Islamic formal fast at sunset

**Ifṭārī** افطاری : eating to break Islamic formal fast.

**In Shā’ Allāh, in shā’ allāh** ان شاء الله : God willing. The term In Sha Allah, consists of three Arabic words, In ان, Sha شا and الله Allah.

**Islām** اسلام : submission. Name of the religion introduced by Muḥammad, may peace and blessings of Allah be on him, in A.D. 610.

**istighfār** استغفار : seeking forgiveness from Allah

**Jalsa Salāna** جلسة سالانه : Annual Convention

**Jamā’at, Jamā’ah** جماعة : Community, Organization. community of believers.

**Janazah:** funeral

**Janaza Gah:** funeral venue

**Kashti-i-Nūḥ:** Noah’s Ark. A booklet by Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Ghulām Aḥmad (1835-1908), the Promised Messiah, may peace be upon him.

**Khalīfah, khalīfa** خلیفة : Vicegerent. Successor. Also calif, caliph, kalif, kaliph, khalif.

**Khalīfatul-Masīḥ, Khalīfat-ul-Masīḥ** خلیفة المسيح : Successor to Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Ghulām Aḥmad of Qadian (1835-1908), the Promised Messiah, may peace be upon him.

**khutbah, khutba** خطبة : Address. (Friday) sermon.

**Khutba Ilhamiyya:** revealed sermon

**Kitab-ul-Adab:** Book of manners.

**Kitab Fada’il-ul-Qur’an:** Book on the Excellences of the Quran

**Kitab-ul-Iman:** Book about Belief

**Masih Hindustan Mein :** Jesus in India - April 1899

**Maulawī** مؤلوی : Muslim priest, Muslim divine.

**Mubahala** مِبَاهِلَة: Prayer duel.

**Muḥaddath** مُحَدَّث : recipient of word of God

**Muḥaddith** مُحَدِّث : compiler-scholars or editors of ḥadīth

**Muḥaddiththīn** مُحَدِّثِيْنَ : plural of Muḥaddith

**Muhaimin**: dominant. a compact collection of all guidance

**Muhājir** مِهَاجِر : immigrant

**Muhājirīn** مِهَاجِرِيْنَ : immigrants. Muhājirūn.

**Muhājirūn**: see Muhājirīn مِهَاجِرِيْنَ

**mujaddid** مُجَدِّد : rejuvenator, religious reformer

**Musalman Firqah Ahmadiyya**: Muslim Ahmadiyya Sect

**Muslim** مُسْلِم : A follower of the religion of Islam. A book of Ḥadīth, second in the six most authentic compilations.

**Nabi**: prophet

**Nāsirāt** نَاصِرَات : helpers (feminine). A member of Majlis Nasirat-ul-Ahmadiyya, association of young Ahmadi girls.

**Nizāmuddīn Auliya** نِزَامُ الدِّينِ اَوْلِيَاء : A Muslim saint who lived in India A.D. 1238-1328.

**Paigham-e-Sulh**: message of peace

**Panda** پانڈا : A Hindu priest.

**Qadi** قَاضِي : judge

**Qur’ān, Quran, Koran** قُرْآن : recitation, a book most read. The Holy Book revealed to Muḥammad, ṣallallāhu ‘alaihi wa sallam, in Arabic over 23 years.

**Radiyahallahu ‘Anhu (ra-di-yal-laa-hu ‘an-hu)** : may Allah be pleased with him – used with the names of companions of the Holy Prophetsa or the Promised Messiahas.

**Rahimahullahu ‘Alaihi (ra-hi-ma-hul-laa-hu ‘a-lai-hi)** : may Allah have mercy on him – used for other holy personages.

**Ramaḍān (Ramadhān, Ramazān, Ramzān)** رَمَضَانَ : Islamic lunar month ascribed for prescribed fasting.

**Rasūl, Rasool** رَسُول : messenger, prophet, (pl. rusul)

**Rūḥānī Khazā’in** رُوحَانِي خَزَائِن : Spiritual treasures. Collection of the writings of the Promised Messiah, peace be on him.

**Rukū** رُكُوع : bowing (in Islamic prescribed worship)

**Šāhibzādah**: صاحب زاده Son of a respected person. Respected gentleman.

**Šāhibzādī**: صاحب زادی Daughter of a respected person. Respected lady.

**ṣaḥīḥ** صَحِيح : correct

**Ṣalāt** صَلَاة : Formal Prayer offered according to a prescribed procedure. Thus, Ṣalātut-Tahajjud, Ṣalātul-Fajr, Ṣalātuz-Zuhr, Ṣalātul-‘Asr, Ṣalātul-Maghrib, Ṣalātul-‘Ishā.

**ṣalāt ‘al-Nabiyy**: Durūd

**ṣallallāhu ‘alaihi wa sallam** صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ : peace and blessings of Allah be on him.

**ṣallallāhu ‘alaihi wa sallam (sal-lal-laa-hu ‘a-lai-hi wa sal-lam) صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ**: peace and blessings of Allah be on him, whenever the Holy Prophet Muhammad is mentioned.

**Shahīd** شَهِيد : Martyr; also, witness

**Sharādh**: Festival. Food given to their priests by Hindus for the dead.

**Sharī‘ah, Shari‘at** شَرِيعَة: waterhole, approach to waterhole, (Islamic) jurisprudence, divine law, code, law. ‘ibādah (ritual worship); mu‘amalāt (transactions and contracts); ādāb (moral behavior and manners); i‘tiqādāt (beliefs); and ‘uqūbāt (punishment)

**Shirk** شِرْك : Association of aught as partner in person and attributes to God.

**Sunnah** سُنَّة: practice of the Holy Prophet Muḥammad, ṣallallāhu ‘alaihi wa sallam. normative teaching of the prophet.

**Sūrah** سُورَة: A chapter of the Holy Qur’ān. There are 114 Sūrahs (chapters)—of various lengths—in the Holy Qur’ān.

**Tanween**: Double strokes over or under a letter.

**Taqwā** تَقْوَى : righteousness.

**tarbiyat, tarbiyah** تَرْبِيَة: training

**tilāwat** تِلَاوَة: recitation.

**Tirmidhī** تَرْمِذِي : Tirmidhi’s collection of Ahadith.

**‘ulamā** عُلَمَاء : (religious) scholars. religious scholars. Plural of ‘ālim, a (religious) scholar. {ulema}. ‘Ulama is already a plural so it will be wrong to add an s to it (‘ulamas) to make its plural.

**‘ulema** علماء: see ‘ulamā

**‘Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb** عُمَرُ بْنُ الْخَطَّابِ : The second successor to the Holy Prophet (peace and blessings of Allāh be on him)

**Uthmān (Osman, Usman, Othman)** عُثْمَانُ : Third successor to the Holy Prophet Muhammad, sallallahu alaihi wa sallam.

**waṣīyyat** وَصِيَّة : will

**Zakāt, Zakah** زَكَاة : Prescribed alms. legal alms.

**Zuhr** ظُهْر : Afternoon Prayer.



## Righteous Offspring Who Pray Will Benefit You In the Hereafter

The Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> states:

“One needs to invest into the Afterlife. I am always surprised as to why people desire to have children. Who knows what will happen with them? How will they turn out? If your children are righteous, then they can benefit you in this world. If they are such children who pray and whose prayers are heard, then they will benefit you in the Afterlife. Most people don't think about why they have this desire to have children. And those who do, limit their thoughts to that their children will become their heirs to their wealth and will become someone big in this world. One should always be asking for God's Grace. When he will do so, he will find God to be extremely Merciful and Gracious. One should refine his intentions... The fact of the matter is that man has many plans and aspirations for the future. If he will align his desires and pleasures with the pleasure of God, God Himself will fulfill his desires.”

(Malfoozat Vol 4 pg 295)

In 2005, Ahmadiyya Muslim Jamaat Canada established a Sunday School in Maple to provide religious education for children. Over time, this school evolved into an academy for Atfal and Nasirat, now known as Nasir Academy, with over 17 branches across Canada. As Nasir Academy expanded, there was a need to enhance the syllabus for each level. This Workbook series, based on Tahir Academy USA's Workbooks, addresses that need. We are grateful to the National Amir Jamaat Ahmadiyya USA and the National Secretary Tarbiyat Jamaat Ahmadiyya USA for granting us the rights to publish these Workbooks under the Nasir Academy name.

To report any errors or omissions, please contact the National Secretary Talim at [talim@ahmadiyya.ca](mailto:talim@ahmadiyya.ca).



NASIR ACADEMY CANADA



AHMADIYYA MUSLIM JAMAAT CANADA



MAJLIS ATFALUL AHMADIYYA CANADA



9 781948 811040

ISBN: 978-1-948811-04-0